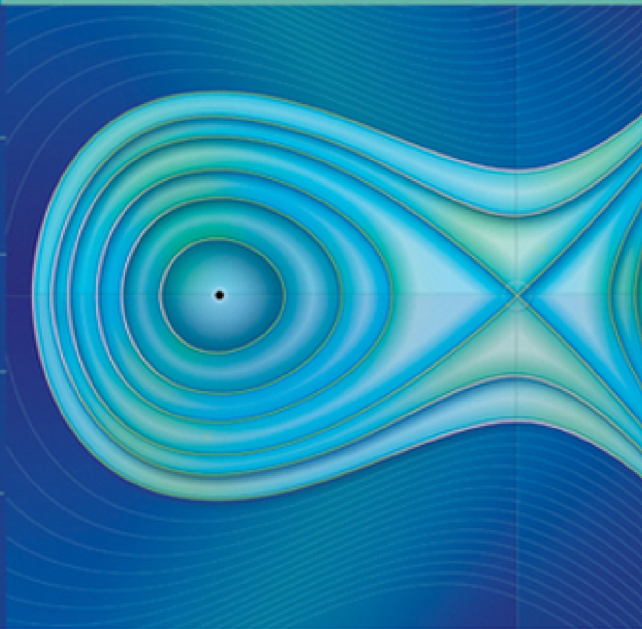
10th Edition

Elementary Differential Equations and Boundary Value Problems



William E. Boyce / Richard C. DiPrima

CONTENTS

CHAPTER

2

First Order Differential Equations

This chapter deals with differential equations of first order

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y), \tag{1}$$

where f is a given function of two variables. Any differentiable function $y = \phi(t)$ that satisfies this equation for all t in some interval is called a solution, and our object is to determine whether such functions exist and, if so, to develop methods for finding them. Unfortunately, for an arbitrary function f, there is no general method for solving the equation in terms of elementary functions. Instead, we will describe several methods, each of which is applicable to a certain subclass of first order equations. The most important of these are linear equations (Section 2.1), separable equations (Section 2.2), and exact equations (Section 2.6). Other sections of this chapter describe some of the important applications of first order differential equations, introduce the idea of approximating a solution by numerical computation, and discuss some theoretical questions related to the existence and uniqueness of solutions. The final section includes an example of chaotic solutions in the context of first order difference equations, which have some important points of similarity with differential equations and are simpler to investigate.

2.1 Linear Equations; Method of Integrating Factors

If the function f in Eq. (1) depends linearly on the dependent variable y, then Eq. (1) is called a first order linear equation. In Sections 1.1 and 1.2 we discussed a restricted type of first order linear equation in which the coefficients are constants.

A typical example is

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = -ay + b, \tag{2}$$

where a and b are given constants. Recall that an equation of this form describes the motion of an object falling in the atmosphere.

Now we want to consider the most general first order linear equation, which is obtained by replacing the coefficients a and b in Eq. (2) by arbitrary functions of t. We will usually write the general **first order linear equation** in the standard form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + p(t)y = g(t), \tag{3}$$

where p and g are given functions of the independent variable t. Sometimes it is more convenient to write the equation in the form

$$P(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + Q(t)y = G(t), \tag{4}$$

where P, Q, and G are given. Of course, as long as $P(t) \neq 0$, you can convert Eq. (4) to Eq. (3) by dividing Eq. (4) by $P(t)$.

In some cases it is possible to solve a first order linear equation immediately by integrating the equation, as in the next example.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the differential equation

$$(4 + t^2)\frac{dy}{dt} + 2ty = 4t. \tag{5}$$

The left side of Eq. (5) is a linear combination of dy/dt and y, a combination that also appears in the rule from calculus for differentiating a product. In fact,

$$(4 + t^2)\frac{dy}{dt} + 2ty = \frac{d}{dt}[(4 + t^2)y];$$

it follows that Eq. (5) can be rewritten as

$$\frac{d}{dt}[(4 + t^2)y] = 4t. \tag{6}$$

Thus, even though y is unknown, we can integrate both sides of Eq. (6) with respect to t, thereby obtaining

$$(4 + t^2)y = 2t^2 + c, \tag{7}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant of integration. By solving for y we find that

$$y = \frac{2t^2}{4 + t^2} + \frac{c}{4 + t^2}. \tag{8}$$

This is the general solution of Eq. (5).

Unfortunately, most first order linear equations cannot be solved as illustrated in Example 1 because their left sides are not the derivative of the product of y and some other function. However, Leibniz discovered that if the differential equation is multiplied by a certain function $\mu(t)$, then the equation is converted into one that is immediately integrable by using the product rule for derivatives, just as in Example 1. The function $\mu(t)$ is called an **integrating factor** and our main task is to determine how to find it for a given equation. We will show how this method works first for an example and then for the general first order linear equation in the standard form (3).

EXAMPLE 2

Find the general solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + \tfrac{1}{2}y = \tfrac{1}{2}e^{t/3}. \tag{9}$$

Draw some representative integral curves; that is, plot solutions corresponding to several values of the arbitrary constant c. Also find the particular solution whose graph contains the point $(0, 1)$.

The first step is to multiply Eq. (9) by a function $\mu(t)$, as yet undetermined; thus

$$\mu(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + \tfrac{1}{2}\mu(t)y = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu(t)e^{t/3}. \tag{10}$$

The question now is whether we can choose $\mu(t)$ so that the left side of Eq. (10) is the derivative of the product $\mu(t)y$. For any differentiable function $\mu(t)$ we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}[\mu(t)y] = \mu(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{d\mu(t)}{dt}y, \tag{11}$$

Thus the left side of Eq. (10) and the right side of Eq. (11) are identical, provided that we choose $\mu(t)$ to satisfy

$$\frac{d\mu(t)}{dt} = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu(t). \tag{12}$$

Our search for an integrating factor will be successful if we can find a solution of Eq. (12). Perhaps you can readily identify a function that satisfies Eq. (12): what well-known function from calculus has a derivative that is equal to one-half times the original function? More systematically, rewrite Eq. (12) as

$$\frac{d\mu(t)/dt}{\mu(t)} = \tfrac{1}{2},$$

which is equivalent to

$$\frac{d}{dt}\ln|\mu(t)| = \tfrac{1}{2}. \tag{13}$$

Then it follows that

$$\ln|\mu(t)| = \tfrac{1}{2}t + C,$$

or

$$\mu(t) = ce^{t/2}. \tag{14}$$

The function $\mu(t)$ given by Eq. (14) is an integrating factor for Eq. (9). Since we do not need the most general integrating factor, we will choose c to be 1 in Eq. (14) and use $\mu(t) = e^{t/2}$.

Now we return to Eq. (9), multiply it by the integrating factor $e^{t/2}$, and obtain

$$e^{t/2}\frac{dy}{dt} + \tfrac{1}{2}e^{t/2}y = \tfrac{1}{2}e^{5t/6}. \tag{15}$$

By the choice we have made of the integrating factor, the left side of Eq. (15) is the derivative of $e^{t/2}y$, so that Eq. (15) becomes

$$\frac{d}{dt}(e^{t/2}y) = \tfrac{1}{2}e^{5t/6}. \tag{16}$$

By integrating both sides of Eq. (16), we obtain

$$e^{t/2}y = \tfrac{3}{5}e^{5t/6} + c, \tag{17}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Finally, on solving Eq. (17) for y, we have the general solution of Eq. (9), namely,

$$y = \tfrac{3}{5}e^{t/3} + ce^{-t/2}. \tag{18}$$

To find the solution passing through the point $(0, 1)$, we set $t = 0$ and $y = 1$ in Eq. (18), obtaining $1 = (3/5) + c$. Thus $c = 2/5$, and the desired solution is

$$y = \tfrac{3}{5}e^{t/3} + \tfrac{2}{5}e^{-t/2}. \tag{19}$$

Figure 2.1.1 includes the graphs of Eq. (18) for several values of c with a direction field in the background. The solution satisfying $y(0) = 1$ is shown by the black curve.

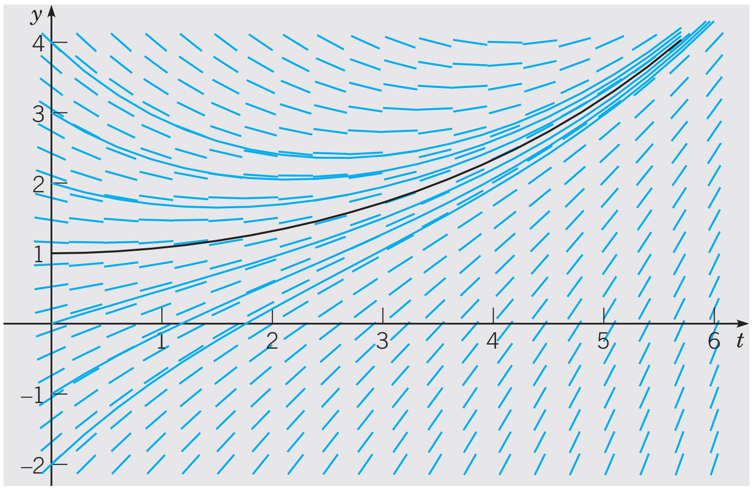


FIGURE 2.1.1 Direction field and integral curves of $y' + \frac{1}{2}y = \frac{1}{2}e^{t/3}$; the black curve passes through the point $(0, 1)$.

Let us now extend the method of integrating factors to equations of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + ay = g(t), \tag{20}$$

where a is a given constant and $g(t)$ is a given function. Proceeding as in Example 2, we find that the integrating factor $\mu(t)$ must satisfy

$$\frac{d\mu}{dt} = a\mu, \tag{21}$$

rather than Eq. (12). Thus the integrating factor is $\mu(t) = e^{at}$. Multiplying Eq. (20) by $\mu(t)$, we obtain

$$e^{at}\frac{dy}{dt} + ae^{at}y = e^{at}g(t),$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dt}(e^{at}y) = e^{at}g(t). \tag{22}$$

By integrating both sides of Eq. (22), we find that

$$e^{at}y = \int e^{at}g(t)\,dt + c, \tag{23}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. For many simple functions $g(t)$, we can evaluate the integral in Eq. (23) and express the solution y in terms of elementary functions, as in Example 2. However, for more complicated functions $g(t)$, it is necessary to leave the solution in integral form. In this case

$$y = e^{-at}\int_{t_0}^{t} e^{as}g(s)\,ds + ce^{-at}. \tag{24}$$

Note that in Eq. (24) we have used s to denote the integration variable to distinguish it from the independent variable t, and we have chosen some convenient value t_0 as the lower limit of integration.

EXAMPLE 3

Find the general solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} - 2y = 4 - t \tag{25}$$

and plot the graphs of several solutions. Discuss the behavior of solutions as $t \to \infty$.

Equation (25) is of the form (20) with $a = -2$; therefore, the integrating factor is $\mu(t) = e^{-2t}$. Multiplying the differential equation (25) by $\mu(t)$, we obtain

$$e^{-2t}\frac{dy}{dt} - 2e^{-2t}y = 4e^{-2t} - te^{-2t},$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dt}(e^{-2t}y) = 4e^{-2t} - te^{-2t}. \tag{26}$$

Then, by integrating both sides of this equation, we have

$$e^{-2t}y = -2e^{-2t} + \tfrac{1}{2}te^{-2t} + \tfrac{1}{4}e^{-2t} + c,$$

where we have used integration by parts on the last term in Eq. (26). Thus the general solution of Eq. (25) is

$$y = -\tfrac{7}{4} + \tfrac{1}{2}t + ce^{2t}. \tag{27}$$

A direction field and graphs of the solution (27) for several values of c are shown in Figure 2.1.2. The behavior of the solution for large values of t is determined by the term ce^{2t}. If $c \neq 0$, then the solution grows exponentially large in magnitude, with the same sign as c itself. Thus the solutions diverge as t becomes large. The boundary between solutions that ultimately grow positively and those that ultimately grow negatively occurs when $c = 0$. If we substitute $c = 0$ into Eq. (27) and then set $t = 0$, we find that $y = -7/4$ is the separation point on the y-axis. Note that for this initial value, the solution is $y = -\frac{7}{4} + \frac{1}{2}t$; it grows positively, but linearly rather than exponentially.

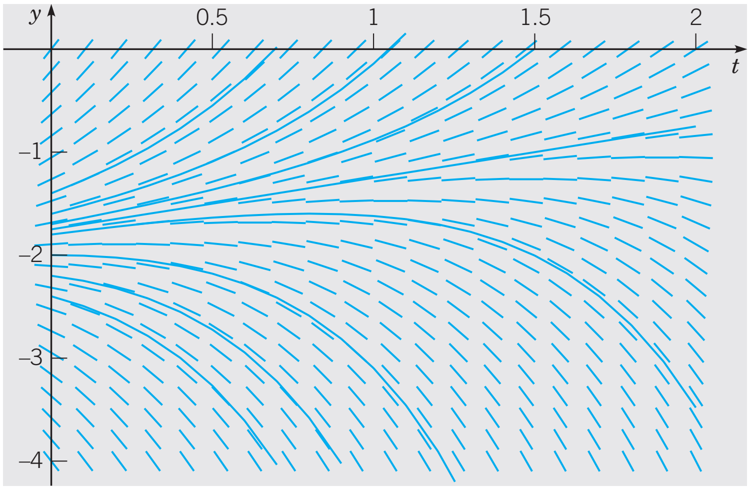


FIGURE 2.1.2 Direction field and integral curves of $y' - 2y = 4 - t$.

Now we return to the general first order linear equation (3)

$$\frac{dy}{dt} + p(t)y = g(t),$$

where p and g are given functions. To determine an appropriate integrating factor, we multiply Eq. (3) by an as yet undetermined function $\mu(t)$, obtaining

$$\mu(t)\frac{dy}{dt} + p(t)\mu(t)y = \mu(t)g(t). \tag{28}$$

Following the same line of development as in Example 2, we see that the left side of Eq. (28) is the derivative of the product $\mu(t)y$, provided that $\mu(t)$ satisfies the equation

$$\frac{d\mu(t)}{dt} = p(t)\mu(t). \tag{29}$$

If we assume temporarily that $\mu(t)$ is positive, then we have

$$\frac{d\mu(t)/dt}{\mu(t)} = p(t),$$

and consequently

$$\ln \mu(t) = \int p(t)\,dt + k.$$

By choosing the arbitrary constant k to be zero, we obtain the simplest possible function for μ, namely,

$$\mu(t) = \exp \int p(t)\,dt. \tag{30}$$

Note that $\mu(t)$ is positive for all t, as we assumed. Returning to Eq. (28), we have

$$\frac{d}{dt}[\mu(t)y] = \mu(t)g(t). \tag{31}$$

Hence

$$\mu(t)y = \int \mu(t)g(t)\,dt + c, \tag{32}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Sometimes the integral in Eq.(32) can be evaluated in terms of elementary functions. However, in general this is not possible, so the general solution of Eq. (3) is

$$y = \frac{1}{\mu(t)}\left[\int_{t_0}^{t} \mu(s)g(s)\,ds + c\right], \tag{33}$$

where again t_0 is some convenient lower limit of integration. Observe that Eq. (33) involves two integrations, one to obtain $\mu(t)$ from Eq. (30) and the other to determine y from Eq. (33).

EXAMPLE 4

Solve the initial value problem

$$ty' + 2y = 4t^2, \tag{34}$$

$$y(1) = 2. \tag{35}$$

In order to determine $p(t)$ and $g(t)$ correctly, we must first rewrite Eq. (34) in the standard form (3). Thus we have

$$y' + (2/t)y = 4t, \tag{36}$$

so $p(t) = 2/t$ and $g(t) = 4t$. To solve Eq. (36), we first compute the integrating factor $\mu(t)$:

$$\mu(t) = \exp \int \frac{2}{t}\,dt = e^{2\ln|t|} = t^2.$$

On multiplying Eq. (36) by $\mu(t) = t^2$, we obtain

$$t^2y' + 2ty = (t^2y)' = 4t^3,$$

and therefore

$$t^2y = t^4 + c,$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. It follows that

$$y = t^2 + \frac{c}{t^2} \tag{37}$$

is the general solution of Eq. (34). Integral curves of Eq. (34) for several values of c are shown in Figure 2.1.3. To satisfy the initial condition (35), it is necessary to choose $c = 1$; thus

$$y = t^2 + \frac{1}{t^2}, \qquad t > 0 \tag{38}$$

is the solution of the initial value problem (34), (35). This solution is shown by the black curve in Figure 2.1.3. Note that it becomes unbounded and is asymptotic to the positive y-axis as $t \to 0$ from the right. This is the effect of the infinite discontinuity in the coefficient $p(t)$ at the origin. The function $y = t^2 + (1/t^2)$ for $t < 0$ is not part of the solution of this initial value problem.

This is the first example in which the solution fails to exist for some values of t. Again, this is due to the infinite discontinuity in $p(t)$ at $t = 0$, which restricts the solution to the interval $0 < t < \infty$.

Looking again at Figure 2.1.3, we see that some solutions (those for which $c > 0$) are asymptotic to the positive y-axis as $t \to 0$ from the right, while other solutions (for which $c < 0$)

are asymptotic to the negative y-axis. The solution for which $c = 0$, namely, $y = t^2$, remains bounded and differentiable even at $t = 0$. If we generalize the initial condition (35) to

$$y(1) = y_0, \tag{39}$$

then $c = y_0 - 1$ and the solution (38) becomes

$$y = t^2 + \frac{y_0 - 1}{t^2}, \qquad t > 0 \text{ if } y_0 \neq 1. \tag{40}$$

As in Example 3, this is another instance where there is a critical initial value, namely, $y_0 = 1$, that separates solutions that behave in one way from others that behave quite differently.

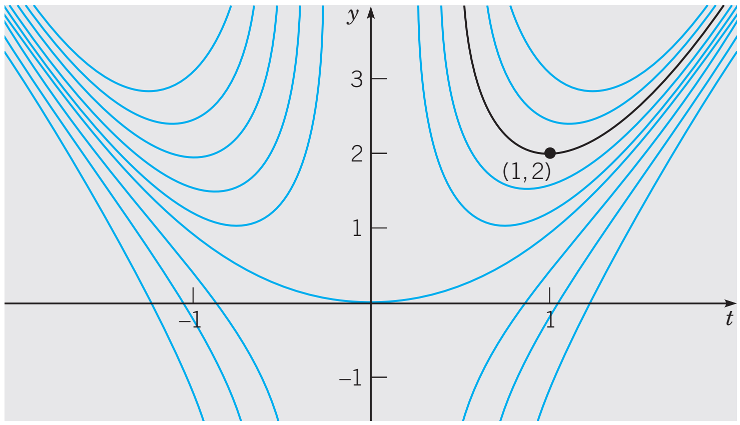


FIGURE 2.1.3 Integral curves of the differential equation $ty' + 2y = 4t^2$; the black curve passes through the point $(1, 2)$.

EXAMPLE 5

Solve the initial value problem

$$2y' + ty = 2, \tag{41}$$
$$y(0) = 1. \tag{42}$$

To convert the differential equation (41) to the standard form (3), we must divide by 2, obtaining

$$y' + (t/2)y = 1. \tag{43}$$

Thus $p(t) = t/2$, and the integrating factor is $\mu(t) = \exp(t^2/4)$. Then multiply Eq. (43) by $\mu(t)$, so that

$$e^{t^2/4}y' + \frac{t}{2}e^{t^2/4}y = e^{t^2/4}. \tag{44}$$

The left side of Eq. (44) is the derivative of $e^{t^2/4}y$, so by integrating both sides of Eq. (44), we obtain

$$e^{t^2/4}y = \int e^{t^2/4}\,dt + c. \tag{45}$$

The integral on the right side of Eq. (45) cannot be evaluated in terms of the usual elementary functions, so we leave the integral unevaluated. However, by choosing the lower limit of integration as the initial point $t = 0$, we can replace Eq. (45) by

$$e^{t^2/4}y = \int_0^t e^{s^2/4}\,ds + c, \tag{46}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. It then follows that the general solution y of Eq. (41) is given by

$$y = e^{-t^2/4}\int_0^t e^{s^2/4}\,ds + ce^{-t^2/4}. \tag{47}$$

The initial condition (42) requires that $c = 1$.

The main purpose of this example is to illustrate that sometimes the solution must be left in terms of an integral. This is usually at most a slight inconvenience, rather than a serious obstacle. For a given value of t, the integral in Eq. (47) is a definite integral and can be approximated to any desired degree of accuracy by using readily available numerical integrators. By repeating this process for many values of t and plotting the results, you can obtain a graph of a solution. Alternatively, you can use a numerical approximation method, such as those discussed in Chapter 8, that proceed directly from the differential equation and need no expression for the solution. Software packages such as Maple and Mathematica readily execute such procedures and produce graphs of solutions of differential equations.

Figure 2.1.4 displays graphs of the solution (47) for several values of c. From the figure it may be plausible to conjecture that all solutions approach a limit as $t \to \infty$. The limit can be found analytically (see Problem 32).

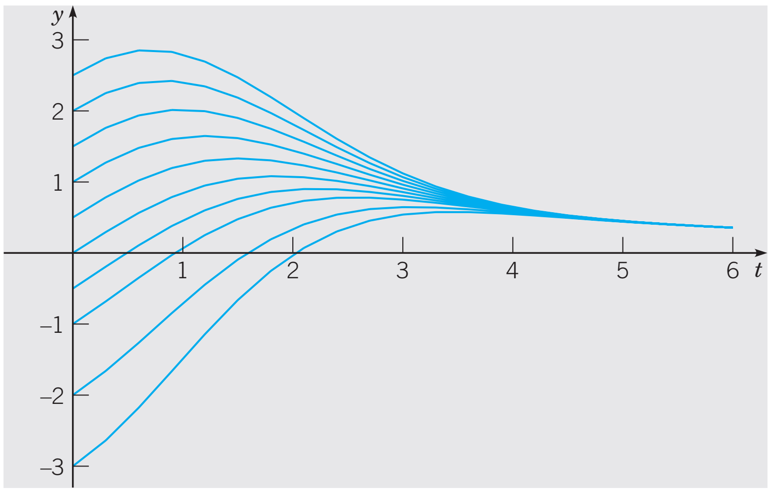


FIGURE 2.1.4 Integral curves of $2y' + ty = 2$.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 12:

(a) Draw a direction field for the given differential equation.

(b) Based on an inspection of the direction field, describe how solutions behave for large t.

(c) Find the general solution of the given differential equation, and use it to determine how solutions behave as $t \to \infty$.

1. $y' + 3y = t + e^{-2t}$
2. $y' - 2y = t^2 e^{2t}$
3. $y' + y = te^{-t} + 1$
4. $y' + (1/t)y = 3\cos 2t, \qquad t > 0$
5. $y' - 2y = 3e^t$
6. $ty' + 2y = \sin t, \qquad t > 0$
7. $y' + 2ty = 2te^{-t^2}$
8. $(1 + t^2)y' + 4ty = (1 + t^2)^{-2}$
9. $2y' + y = 3t$
10. $ty' - y = t^2 e^{-t}, \qquad t > 0$
11. $y' + y = 5\sin 2t$
12. $2y' + y = 3t^2$

In each of Problems 13 through 20, find the solution of the given initial value problem.

13. $y' - y = 2te^{2t}, \qquad y(0) = 1$
14. $y' + 2y = te^{-2t}, \qquad y(1) = 0$
15. $ty' + 2y = t^2 - t + 1, \qquad y(1) = \frac{1}{2}, \quad t > 0$
16. $y' + (2/t)y = (\cos t)/t^2, \qquad y(\pi) = 0, \quad t > 0$
17. $y' - 2y = e^{2t}, \qquad y(0) = 2$
18. $ty' + 2y = \sin t, \qquad y(\pi/2) = 1, \quad t > 0$
19. $t^3 y' + 4t^2 y = e^{-t}, \qquad y(-1) = 0, \quad t < 0$
20. $ty' + (t + 1)y = t, \qquad y(\ln 2) = 1, \quad t > 0$

In each of Problems 21 through 23:

(a) Draw a direction field for the given differential equation. How do solutions appear to behave as t becomes large? Does the behavior depend on the choice of the initial value a? Let a_0 be the value of a for which the transition from one type of behavior to another occurs. Estimate the value of a_0.

(b) Solve the initial value problem and find the critical value a_0 exactly.

(c) Describe the behavior of the solution corresponding to the initial value a_0.

21. $y' - \frac{1}{2}y = 2\cos t, \qquad y(0) = a$
22. $2y' - y = e^{t/3}, \qquad y(0) = a$
23. $3y' - 2y = e^{-\pi t/2}, \qquad y(0) = a$

In each of Problems 24 through 26:

(a) Draw a direction field for the given differential equation. How do solutions appear to behave as $t \to 0$? Does the behavior depend on the choice of the initial value a? Let a_0 be the value of a for which the transition from one type of behavior to another occurs. Estimate the value of a_0.

(b) Solve the initial value problem and find the critical value a_0 exactly.

(c) Describe the behavior of the solution corresponding to the initial value a_0.

24. $ty' + (t + 1)y = 2te^{-t}, \qquad y(1) = a, \quad t > 0$
25. $ty' + 2y = (\sin t)/t, \qquad y(-\pi/2) = a, \quad t < 0$
26. $(\sin t)y' + (\cos t)y = e^t, \qquad y(1) = a, \quad 0 < t < \pi$
27. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' + \tfrac{1}{2}y = 2\cos t, \qquad y(0) = -1.$$

Find the coordinates of the first local maximum point of the solution for $t > 0$.

28. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' + \tfrac{2}{3}y = 1 - \tfrac{1}{2}t, \qquad y(0) = y_0.$$

Find the value of y_0 for which the solution touches, but does not cross, the t-axis.

29. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' + \tfrac{1}{4}y = 3 + 2\cos 2t, \qquad y(0) = 0.$$

(a) Find the solution of this initial value problem and describe its behavior for large t.
(b) Determine the value of t for which the solution first intersects the line $y = 12$.

30. Find the value of y_0 for which the solution of the initial value problem

$$y' - y = 1 + 3\sin t, \qquad y(0) = y_0$$

remains finite as $t \to \infty$.

31. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' - \tfrac{3}{2}y = 3t + 2e^t, \qquad y(0) = y_0.$$

Find the value of y_0 that separates solutions that grow positively as $t \to \infty$ from those that grow negatively. How does the solution that corresponds to this critical value of y_0 behave as $t \to \infty$?

32. Show that all solutions of $2y' + ty = 2$ [Eq. (41) of the text] approach a limit as $t \to \infty$, and find the limiting value.
Hint: Consider the general solution, Eq. (47), and use L'Hôpital's rule on the first term.

33. Show that if a and λ are positive constants, and b is any real number, then every solution of the equation

$$y' + ay = be^{-\lambda t}$$

has the property that $y \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$.
Hint: Consider the cases $a = \lambda$ and $a \neq \lambda$ separately.

In each of Problems 34 through 37, construct a first order linear differential equation whose solutions have the required behavior as $t \to \infty$. Then solve your equation and confirm that the solutions do indeed have the specified property.

34. All solutions have the limit 3 as $t \to \infty$.
35. All solutions are asymptotic to the line $y = 3 - t$ as $t \to \infty$.
36. All solutions are asymptotic to the line $y = 2t - 5$ as $t \to \infty$.
37. All solutions approach the curve $y = 4 - t^2$ as $t \to \infty$.
38. **Variation of Parameters.** Consider the following method of solving the general linear equation of first order:

$$y' + p(t)y = g(t). \tag{i}$$

(a) If $g(t) = 0$ for all t, show that the solution is

$$y = A\exp\left[-\int p(t)\,dt\right], \tag{ii}$$

where A is a constant.
(b) If $g(t)$ is not everywhere zero, assume that the solution of Eq. (i) is of the form

$$y = A(t)\exp\left[-\int p(t)\,dt\right], \tag{iii}$$

where A is now a function of t. By substituting for y in the given differential equation, show that $A(t)$ must satisfy the condition

$$A'(t) = g(t) \exp\left[\int p(t)\,dt\right]. \tag{iv}$$

(c) Find $A(t)$ from Eq. (iv). Then substitute for $A(t)$ in Eq. (iii) and determine y. Verify that the solution obtained in this manner agrees with that of Eq. (33) in the text. This technique is known as the method of **variation of parameters**; it is discussed in detail in Section 3.6 in connection with second order linear equations.

In each of Problems 39 through 42, use the method of Problem 38 to solve the given differential equation.

39. $y' - 2y = t^2 e^{2t}$
40. $y' + (1/t)y = 3\cos 2t, \qquad t > 0$
41. $ty' + 2y = \sin t, \qquad t > 0$
42. $2y' + y = 3t^2$

2.2 Separable Equations

In Section 1.2 we used a process of direct integration to solve first order linear equations of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = ay + b, \tag{1}$$

where a and b are constants. We will now show that this process is actually applicable to a much larger class of equations.

We will use x, rather than t, to denote the independent variable in this section for two reasons. In the first place, different letters are frequently used for the variables in a differential equation, and you should not become too accustomed to using a single pair. In particular, x often occurs as the independent variable. Further, we want to reserve t for another purpose later in the section.

The general first order equation is

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y). \tag{2}$$

Linear equations were considered in the preceding section, but if Eq. (2) is nonlinear, then there is no universally applicable method for solving the equation. Here, we consider a subclass of first order equations that can be solved by direct integration.

To identify this class of equations, we first rewrite Eq. (2) in the form

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \tag{3}$$

It is always possible to do this by setting $M(x, y) = -f(x, y)$ and $N(x, y) = 1$, but there may be other ways as well. If it happens that M is a function of x only and N is a function of y only, then Eq. (3) becomes

$$M(x) + N(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \tag{4}$$

Such an equation is said to be **separable**, because if it is written in the differential form

$$M(x)\,dx + N(y)\,dy = 0, \tag{5}$$

then, if you wish, terms involving each variable may be placed on opposite sides of the equation. The differential form (5) is also more symmetric and tends to suppress the distinction between independent and dependent variables.

A separable equation can be solved by integrating the functions M and N. We illustrate the process by an example and then discuss it in general for Eq. (4).

EXAMPLE 1

Show that the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x^2}{1-y^2} \tag{6}$$

is separable, and then find an equation for its integral curves.

If we write Eq. (6) as

$$-x^2 + (1-y^2)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0, \tag{7}$$

then it has the form (4) and is therefore separable. Recall from calculus that if y is a function of x, then by the chain rule,

$$\frac{d}{dx}f(y) = \frac{d}{dy}f(y)\,\frac{dy}{dx} = f'(y)\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

For example, if $f(y) = y - y^3/3$, then

$$\frac{d}{dx}(y - y^3/3) = (1-y^2)\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

Thus the second term in Eq. (7) is the derivative with respect to x of $y - y^3/3$, and the first term is the derivative of $-x^3/3$. Thus Eq. (7) can be written as

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(-\frac{x^3}{3}\right) + \frac{d}{dx}\left(y - \frac{y^3}{3}\right) = 0,$$

or

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(-\frac{x^3}{3} + y - \frac{y^3}{3}\right) = 0.$$

Therefore, by integrating, we obtain

$$-x^3 + 3y - y^3 = c, \tag{8}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Equation (8) is an equation for the integral curves of Eq. (6). A direction field and several integral curves are shown in Figure 2.2.1. Any differentiable function $y = \phi(x)$ that satisfies Eq. (8) is a solution of Eq. (6). An equation of the integral curve passing through a particular point (x_0, y_0) can be found by substituting x_0 and y_0 for x and y, respectively, in Eq. (8) and determining the corresponding value of c.

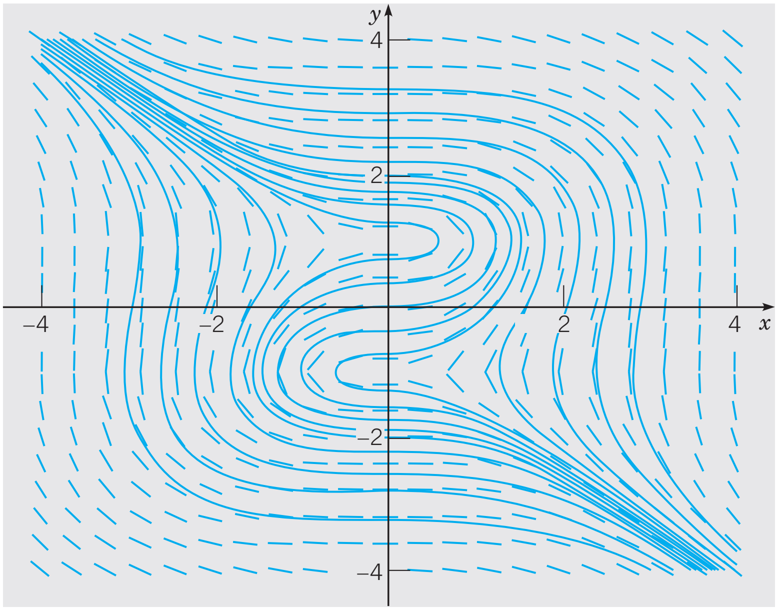


FIGURE 2.2.1 Direction field and integral curves of $y' = x^2/(1 - y^2)$.

Essentially the same procedure can be followed for any separable equation. Returning to Eq. (4), let H_1 and H_2 be any antiderivatives of M and N, respectively. Thus

$$H_1'(x) = M(x), \qquad H_2'(y) = N(y), \tag{9}$$

and Eq. (4) becomes

$$H_1'(x) + H_2'(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \tag{10}$$

If y is regarded as a function of x, then according to the chain rule,

$$H_2'(y)\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dy}H_2(y)\,\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}H_2(y). \tag{11}$$

Consequently, we can write Eq. (10) as

$$\frac{d}{dx}[H_1(x) + H_2(y)] = 0. \tag{12}$$

By integrating Eq. (12), we obtain

$$H_1(x) + H_2(y) = c, \tag{13}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Any differentiable function $y = \phi(x)$ that satisfies Eq. (13) is a solution of Eq. (4); in other words, Eq. (13) defines the solution implicitly rather than explicitly. In practice, Eq. (13) is usually obtained from Eq. (5) by integrating the first term with respect to x and the second term with respect to y. The justification for this is the argument that we have just given.

The differential equation (4), together with an initial condition

$$y(x_0) = y_0, \tag{14}$$

forms an initial value problem. To solve this initial value problem, we must determine the appropriate value for the constant c in Eq. (13). We do this by setting $x = x_0$ and $y = y_0$ in Eq. (13) with the result that

$$c = H_1(x_0) + H_2(y_0). \tag{15}$$

Substituting this value of c in Eq. (13) and noting that

$$H_1(x) - H_1(x_0) = \int_{x_0}^{x} M(s)\,ds, \qquad H_2(y) - H_2(y_0) = \int_{y_0}^{y} N(s)\,ds,$$

we obtain

$$\int_{x_0}^{x} M(s)\,ds + \int_{y_0}^{y} N(s)\,ds = 0. \tag{16}$$

Equation (16) is an implicit representation of the solution of the differential equation (4) that also satisfies the initial condition (14). Bear in mind that to determine an explicit formula for the solution, you need to solve Eq. (16) for y as a function of x. Unfortunately, it is often impossible to do this analytically; in such cases you can resort to numerical methods to find approximate values of y for given values of x.

EXAMPLE 2

Solve the initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3x^2 + 4x + 2}{2(y-1)}, \qquad y(0) = -1, \tag{17}$$

and determine the interval in which the solution exists.

The differential equation can be written as

$$2(y-1)\,dy = (3x^2 + 4x + 2)\,dx.$$

Integrating the left side with respect to y and the right side with respect to x gives

$$y^2 - 2y = x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + c, \tag{18}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. To determine the solution satisfying the prescribed initial condition, we substitute $x = 0$ and $y = -1$ in Eq. (18), obtaining $c = 3$. Hence the solution of the initial value problem is given implicitly by

$$y^2 - 2y = x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + 3. \tag{19}$$

To obtain the solution explicitly, we must solve Eq. (19) for y in terms of x. That is a simple matter in this case, since Eq. (19) is quadratic in y, and we obtain

$$y = 1 \pm \sqrt{x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + 4}. \tag{20}$$

Equation (20) gives two solutions of the differential equation, only one of which, however, satisfies the given initial condition. This is the solution corresponding to the minus sign in Eq. (20), so we finally obtain

$$y = \phi(x) = 1 - \sqrt{x^3 + 2x^2 + 2x + 4} \tag{21}$$

as the solution of the initial value problem (17). Note that if we choose the plus sign by mistake in Eq. (20), then we obtain the solution of the same differential equation that satisfies the initial condition $y(0) = 3$. Finally, to determine the interval in which the solution (21) is valid, we must find the interval in which the quantity under the radical is positive. The only real zero of this expression is $x = -2$, so the desired interval is $x > -2$. Some integral curves of the differential equation are shown in Figure 2.2.2. The black curve passes through the point $(0, -1)$ and thus is the solution of the initial value problem (17). Observe that the boundary of the interval of validity of the solution (21) is determined by the point $(-2, 1)$ at which the tangent line is vertical.

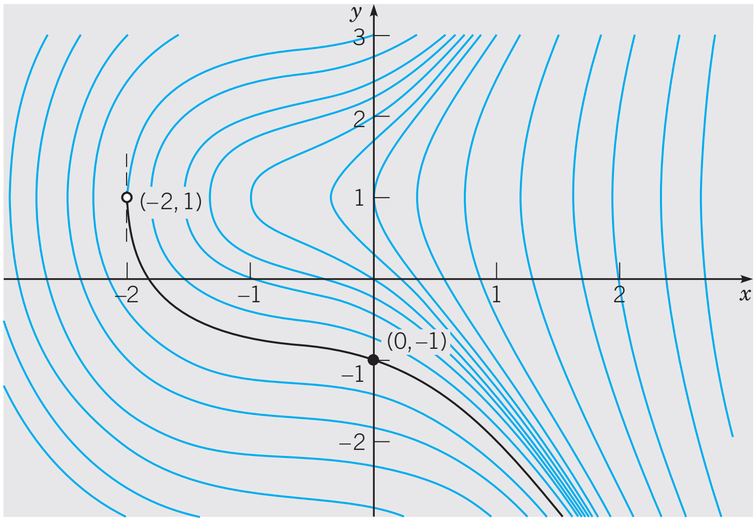


FIGURE 2.2.2 Integral curves of $y' = (3x^2 + 4x + 2)/2(y - 1)$; the solution satisfying $y(0) = -1$ is shown in black and is valid for $x > -2$.

EXAMPLE 3

Solve the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{4x - x^3}{4 + y^3} \tag{22}$$

and draw graphs of several integral curves. Also find the solution passing through the point $(0, 1)$ and determine its interval of validity.

Rewriting Eq. (22) as

$$(4 + y^3)\,dy = (4x - x^3)\,dx,$$

integrating each side, multiplying by 4, and rearranging the terms, we obtain

$$y^4 + 16y + x^4 - 8x^2 = c, \tag{23}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. Any differentiable function $y = \phi(x)$ that satisfies Eq. (23) is a solution of the differential equation (22). Graphs of Eq. (23) for several values of c are shown in Figure 2.2.3.

To find the particular solution passing through $(0, 1)$, we set $x = 0$ and $y = 1$ in Eq. (23) with the result that $c = 17$. Thus the solution in question is given implicitly by

$$y^4 + 16y + x^4 - 8x^2 = 17. \tag{24}$$

It is shown by the black curve in Figure 2.2.3. The interval of validity of this solution extends on either side of the initial point as long as the function remains differentiable. From the figure we see that the interval ends when we reach points where the tangent line is vertical. It follows from the differential equation (22) that these are points where $4 + y^3 = 0$, or

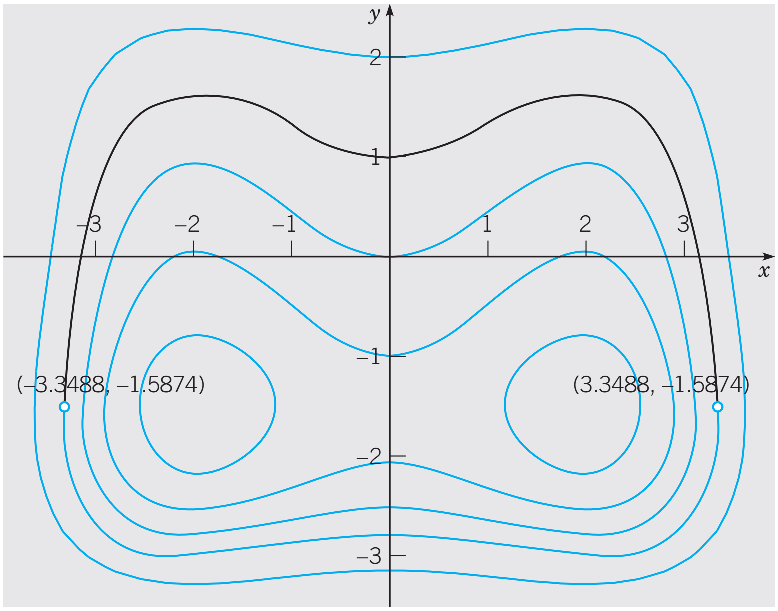


FIGURE 2.2.3 Integral curves of $y' = (4x - x^3)/(4 + y^3)$. The solution passing through $(0, 1)$ is shown by the black curve.

$y = (-4)^{1/3} \cong -1.5874$. From Eq. (24) the corresponding values of x are $x \cong \pm 3.3488$. These points are marked on the graph in Figure 2.2.3.

Note 1: Sometimes an equation of the form (2)

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y)$$

has a constant solution $y = y_0$. Such a solution is usually easy to find because if $f(x, y_0) = 0$ for some value y_0 and for all x, then the constant function $y = y_0$ is a solution of the differential equation (2). For example, the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(y - 3)\cos x}{1 + 2y^2} \tag{25}$$

has the constant solution $y = 3$. Other solutions of this equation can be found by separating the variables and integrating.

Note 2: The investigation of a first order nonlinear equation can sometimes be facilitated by regarding both x and y as functions of a third variable t. Then

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy/dt}{dx/dt}. \tag{26}$$

If the differential equation is

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{F(x, y)}{G(x, y)}, \tag{27}$$

then, by comparing numerators and denominators in Eqs. (26) and (27), we obtain the system

$$dx/dt = G(x, y), \qquad dy/dt = F(x, y). \tag{28}$$

At first sight it may seem unlikely that a problem will be simplified by replacing a single equation by a pair of equations, but in fact, the system (28) may well be more amenable to investigation than the single equation (27). Chapter 9 is devoted to nonlinear systems of the form (28).

Note 3: In Example 2 it was not difficult to solve explicitly for y as a function of x. However, this situation is exceptional, and often it will be better to leave the solution in implicit form, as in Examples 1 and 3. Thus, in the problems below and in other sections where nonlinear equations appear, the words "solve the following differential equation" mean to find the solution explicitly if it is convenient to do so, but otherwise to find an equation defining the solution implicitly.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 8, solve the given differential equation.

1. $y' = x^2/y$
2. $y' = x^2/y(1 + x^3)$
3. $y' + y^2 \sin x = 0$
4. $y' = (3x^2 - 1)/(3 + 2y)$
5. $y' = (\cos^2 x)(\cos^2 2y)$
6. $xy' = (1 - y^2)^{1/2}$
7. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x - e^{-x}}{y + e^y}$
8. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2}{1 + y^2}$

In each of Problems 9 through 20:

(a) Find the solution of the given initial value problem in explicit form.
(b) Plot the graph of the solution.
(c) Determine (at least approximately) the interval in which the solution is defined.

9. $y' = (1 - 2x)y^2, \quad y(0) = -1/6$
10. $y' = (1 - 2x)/y, \quad y(1) = -2$
11. $x\,dx + ye^{-x}dy = 0, \quad y(0) = 1$
12. $dr/d\theta = r^2/\theta, \quad r(1) = 2$
13. $y' = 2x/(y + x^2 y), \quad y(0) = -2$
14. $y' = xy^3(1 + x^2)^{-1/2}, \quad y(0) = 1$
15. $y' = 2x/(1 + 2y), \quad y(2) = 0$
16. $y' = x(x^2 + 1)/4y^3, \quad y(0) = -1/\sqrt{2}$
17. $y' = (3x^2 - e^x)/(2y - 5), \quad y(0) = 1$
18. $y' = (e^{-x} - e^x)/(3 + 4y), \quad y(0) = 1$
19. $\sin 2x\,dx + \cos 3y\,dy = 0, \quad y(\pi/2) = \pi/3$
20. $y^2(1 - x^2)^{1/2}dy = \arcsin x\,dx, \quad y(0) = 1$

Some of the results requested in Problems 21 through 28 can be obtained either by solving the given equations analytically or by plotting numerically generated approximations to the solutions. Try to form an opinion about the advantages and disadvantages of each approach.

21. Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = (1 + 3x^2)/(3y^2 - 6y), \qquad y(0) = 1$$

and determine the interval in which the solution is valid.
Hint: To find the interval of definition, look for points where the integral curve has a vertical tangent.

22. Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = 3x^2/(3y^2 - 4), \qquad y(1) = 0$$

and determine the interval in which the solution is valid.
Hint: To find the interval of definition, look for points where the integral curve has a vertical tangent.

23. Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = 2y^2 + xy^2, \qquad y(0) = 1$$

and determine where the solution attains its minimum value.

24. Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = (2 - e^x)/(3 + 2y), \qquad y(0) = 0$$

and determine where the solution attains its maximum value.

25. Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = 2\cos 2x/(3 + 2y), \qquad y(0) = -1$$

and determine where the solution attains its maximum value.

26. Solve the initial value problem

$$y' = 2(1 + x)(1 + y^2), \qquad y(0) = 0$$

and determine where the solution attains its minimum value.

27. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = ty(4 - y)/3, \qquad y(0) = y_0.$$

(a) Determine how the behavior of the solution as t increases depends on the initial value y_0.
(b) Suppose that $y_0 = 0.5$. Find the time T at which the solution first reaches the value 3.98.

28. Consider the initial value problem

$$y' = ty(4 - y)/(1 + t), \qquad y(0) = y_0 > 0.$$

(a) Determine how the solution behaves as $t \to \infty$.
(b) If $y_0 = 2$, find the time T at which the solution first reaches the value 3.99.
(c) Find the range of initial values for which the solution lies in the interval $3.99 < y < 4.01$ by the time $t = 2$.

29. Solve the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{ay + b}{cy + d},$$

where a, b, c, and d are constants.

Homogeneous Equations. If the right side of the equation $dy/dx = f(x, y)$ can be expressed as a function of the ratio y/x only, then the equation is said to be homogeneous.[1] Such equations can always be transformed into separable equations by a change of the dependent variable. Problem 30 illustrates how to solve first order homogeneous equations.

30. Consider the equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y - 4x}{x - y}. \tag{i}$$

(a) Show that Eq. (i) can be rewritten as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(y/x) - 4}{1 - (y/x)}; \tag{ii}$$

thus Eq. (i) is homogeneous.

(b) Introduce a new dependent variable v so that $v = y/x$, or $y = xv(x)$. Express dy/dx in terms of x, v, and dv/dx.

(c) Replace y and dy/dx in Eq. (ii) by the expressions from part (b) that involve v and dv/dx. Show that the resulting differential equation is

$$v + x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v - 4}{1 - v},$$

or

$$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v^2 - 4}{1 - v}. \tag{iii}$$

Observe that Eq. (iii) is separable.

(d) Solve Eq. (iii), obtaining v implicitly in terms of x.

(e) Find the solution of Eq. (i) by replacing v by y/x in the solution in part (d).

(f) Draw a direction field and some integral curves for Eq. (i). Recall that the right side of Eq. (i) actually depends only on the ratio y/x. This means that integral curves have the same slope at all points on any given straight line through the origin, although the slope changes from one line to another. Therefore, the direction field and the integral curves are symmetric with respect to the origin. Is this symmetry property evident from your plot?

The method outlined in Problem 30 can be used for any homogeneous equation. That is, the substitution $y = xv(x)$ transforms a homogeneous equation into a separable equation. The latter equation can be solved by direct integration, and then replacing v by y/x gives the solution to the original equation. In each of Problems 31 through 38:

(a) Show that the given equation is homogeneous.

(b) Solve the differential equation.

(c) Draw a direction field and some integral curves. Are they symmetric with respect to the origin?

31. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2 + xy + y^2}{x^2}$

32. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2 + 3y^2}{2xy}$

33. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{4y - 3x}{2x - y}$

34. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = -\dfrac{4x + 3y}{2x + y}$

[1] The word "homogeneous" has different meanings in different mathematical contexts. The homogeneous equations considered here have nothing to do with the homogeneous equations that will occur in Chapter 3 and elsewhere.

35. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x + 3y}{x - y}$

36. $(x^2 + 3xy + y^2)\, dx - x^2\, dy = 0$

37. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{x^2 - 3y^2}{2xy}$

38. $\dfrac{dy}{dx} = \dfrac{3y^2 - x^2}{2xy}$

2.3 Modeling with First Order Equations

Differential equations are of interest to nonmathematicians primarily because of the possibility of using them to investigate a wide variety of problems in the physical, biological, and social sciences. One reason for this is that mathematical models and their solutions lead to equations relating the variables and parameters in the problem. These equations often enable you to make predictions about how the natural process will behave in various circumstances. It is often easy to vary parameters in the mathematical model over wide ranges, whereas this may be very time-consuming or expensive, if not impossible, in an experimental setting. Nevertheless, mathematical modeling and experiment or observation are both critically important and have somewhat complementary roles in scientific investigations. Mathematical models are validated by comparison of their predictions with experimental results. On the other hand, mathematical analyses may suggest the most promising directions to explore experimentally, and they may indicate fairly precisely what experimental data will be most helpful.

In Sections 1.1 and 1.2 we formulated and investigated a few simple mathematical models. We begin by recapitulating and expanding on some of the conclusions reached in those sections. Regardless of the specific field of application, there are three identifiable steps that are always present in the process of mathematical modeling.

Construction of the Model. In this step you translate the physical situation into mathematical terms, often using the steps listed at the end of Section 1.1. Perhaps most critical at this stage is to state clearly the physical principle(s) that are believed to govern the process. For example, it has been observed that in some circumstances heat passes from a warmer to a cooler body at a rate proportional to the temperature difference, that objects move about in accordance with Newton's laws of motion, and that isolated insect populations grow at a rate proportional to the current population. Each of these statements involves a rate of change (derivative) and consequently, when expressed mathematically, leads to a differential equation. The differential equation is a mathematical model of the process.

It is important to realize that the mathematical equations are almost always only an approximate description of the actual process. For example, bodies moving at speeds comparable to the speed of light are not governed by Newton's laws, insect populations do not grow indefinitely as stated because of eventual lack of food or space, and heat transfer is affected by factors other than the temperature difference. Thus you should always be aware of the limitations of the model so that you will use it only when it is reasonable to believe that it is accurate. Alternatively, you can adopt the point of view that the mathematical equations exactly describe the operation of

(b) If the substances P and Q are the same, then $p = q$ and Eq. (i) is replaced by

$$dx/dt = \alpha(p - x)^2. \tag{ii}$$

If $x(0) = 0$, determine the limiting value of $x(t)$ as $t \to \infty$ without solving the differential equation. Then solve the initial value problem and determine $x(t)$ for any t.

2.6 Exact Equations and Integrating Factors

For first order equations there are a number of integration methods that are applicable to various classes of problems. The most important of these are linear equations and separable equations, which we have discussed previously. Here, we consider a class of equations known as exact equations for which there is also a well-defined method of solution. Keep in mind, however, that those first order equations that can be solved by elementary integration methods are rather special; most first order equations cannot be solved in this way.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the differential equation

$$2x + y^2 + 2xyy' = 0. \tag{1}$$

The equation is neither linear nor separable, so the methods suitable for those types of equations are not applicable here. However, observe that the function $\psi(x, y) = x^2 + xy^2$ has the property that

$$2x + y^2 = \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x}, \qquad 2xy = \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}. \tag{2}$$

Therefore, the differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dx} = 0. \tag{3}$$

Assuming that y is a function of x, we can use the chain rule to write the left side of Eq. (3) as $d\psi(x, y)/dx$. Then Eq. (3) has the form

$$\frac{d\psi}{dx}(x, y) = \frac{d}{dx}(x^2 + xy^2) = 0. \tag{4}$$

By integrating Eq. (4) we obtain

$$\psi(x, y) = x^2 + xy^2 = c, \tag{5}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant. The level curves of $\psi(x, y)$ are the integral curves of Eq. (1). Solutions of Eq. (1) are defined implicitly by Eq. (5).

In solving Eq. (1) the key step was the recognition that there is a function ψ that satisfies Eqs. (2). More generally, let the differential equation

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)y' = 0 \tag{6}$$

be given. Suppose that we can identify a function $\psi(x, y)$ such that

$$\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x}(x, y) = M(x, y), \qquad \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}(x, y) = N(x, y), \tag{7}$$

and such that $\psi(x, y) = c$ defines $y = \phi(x)$ implicitly as a differentiable function of x. Then

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)y' = \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}\psi[x, \phi(x)]$$

and the differential equation (6) becomes

$$\frac{d}{dx}\psi[x, \phi(x)] = 0. \tag{8}$$

In this case Eq. (6) is said to be an **exact** differential equation. Solutions of Eq. (6), or the equivalent Eq. (8), are given implicitly by

$$\psi(x, y) = c, \tag{9}$$

where c is an arbitrary constant.

In Example 1 it was relatively easy to see that the differential equation was exact and, in fact, easy to find its solution, at least implicitly, by recognizing the required function ψ. For more complicated equations it may not be possible to do this so easily. How can we tell whether a given equation is exact, and if it is, how can we find the function $\psi(x, y)$? The following theorem answers the first question, and its proof provides a way of answering the second.

Theorem 2.6.1 Let the functions M, N, M_y, and N_x, where subscripts denote partial derivatives, be continuous in the rectangular[17] region R: $\alpha < x < \beta, \gamma < y < \delta$. Then Eq. (6)

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)y' = 0$$

is an exact differential equation in R if and only if

$$M_y(x, y) = N_x(x, y) \tag{10}$$

at each point of R. That is, there exists a function ψ satisfying Eqs. (7),

$$\psi_x(x, y) = M(x, y), \qquad \psi_y(x, y) = N(x, y),$$

if and only if M and N satisfy Eq. (10).

[17]It is not essential that the region be rectangular, only that it be simply connected. In two dimensions this means that the region has no holes in its interior. Thus, for example, rectangular or circular regions are simply connected, but an annular region is not. More details can be found in most books on advanced calculus.

The proof of this theorem has two parts. First, we show that if there is a function ψ such that Eqs. (7) are true, then it follows that Eq. (10) is satisfied. Computing M_y and N_x from Eqs. (7), we obtain

$$M_y(x, y) = \psi_{xy}(x, y), \qquad N_x(x, y) = \psi_{yx}(x, y). \tag{11}$$

Since M_y and N_x are continuous, it follows that ψ_{xy} and ψ_{yx} are also continuous. This guarantees their equality, and Eq. (10) is valid.

We now show that if M and N satisfy Eq. (10), then Eq. (6) is exact. The proof involves the construction of a function ψ satisfying Eqs. (7)

$$\psi_x(x, y) = M(x, y), \qquad \psi_y(x, y) = N(x, y).$$

We begin by integrating the first of Eqs. (7) with respect to x, holding y constant. We obtain

$$\psi(x, y) = Q(x, y) + h(y), \tag{12}$$

where $Q(x, y)$ is any differentiable function such that $\partial Q(x, y)/\partial x = M(x, y)$. For example, we might choose

$$Q(x, y) = \int_{x_0}^{x} M(s, y)\, ds, \tag{13}$$

where x_0 is some specified constant in $\alpha < x_0 < \beta$. The function h in Eq. (12) is an arbitrary differentiable function of y, playing the role of the arbitrary constant. Now we must show that it is always possible to choose $h(y)$ so that the second of Eqs. (7) is satisfied—that is, $\psi_y = N$. By differentiating Eq. (12) with respect to y and setting the result equal to $N(x, y)$, we obtain

$$\psi_y(x, y) = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial y}(x, y) + h'(y) = N(x, y).$$

Then, solving for $h'(y)$, we have

$$h'(y) = N(x, y) - \frac{\partial Q}{\partial y}(x, y). \tag{14}$$

In order for us to determine $h(y)$ from Eq. (14), the right side of Eq. (14), despite its appearance, must be a function of y only. One way to show that this is true is to show that its derivative with respect to x is zero. Thus we differentiate the right side of Eq. (14) with respect to x, obtaining

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\frac{\partial Q}{\partial y}(x, y). \tag{15}$$

By interchanging the order of differentiation in the second term of Eq. (15), we have

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}(x, y) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}(x, y),$$

or, since $\partial Q/\partial x = M$,

$$\frac{\partial N}{\partial x}(x, y) - \frac{\partial M}{\partial y}(x, y),$$

which is zero on account of Eq. (10). Hence, despite its apparent form, the right side of Eq. (14) does not, in fact, depend on x. Then we find $h(y)$ by integrating Eq. (14), and upon substituting this function in Eq. (12), we obtain the required function $\psi(x, y)$. This completes the proof of Theorem 2.6.1.

It is possible to obtain an explicit expression for $\psi(x, y)$ in terms of integrals (see Problem 17), but in solving specific exact equations, it is usually simpler and easier just to repeat the procedure used in the preceding proof. That is, integrate $\psi_x = M$ with respect to x, including an arbitrary function of $h(y)$ instead of an arbitrary constant, and then differentiate the result with respect to y and set it equal to N. Finally, use this last equation to solve for $h(y)$. The next example illustrates this procedure.

EXAMPLE 2

Solve the differential equation

$$(y\cos x + 2xe^y) + (\sin x + x^2e^y - 1)y' = 0. \tag{16}$$

By calculating M_y and N_x, we find that

$$M_y(x, y) = \cos x + 2xe^y = N_x(x, y),$$

so the given equation is exact. Thus there is a $\psi(x, y)$ such that

$$\psi_x(x, y) = y\cos x + 2xe^y,$$
$$\psi_y(x, y) = \sin x + x^2e^y - 1.$$

Integrating the first of these equations, we obtain

$$\psi(x, y) = y\sin x + x^2e^y + h(y). \tag{17}$$

Setting $\psi_y = N$ gives

$$\psi_y(x, y) = \sin x + x^2e^y + h'(y) = \sin x + x^2e^y - 1.$$

Thus $h'(y) = -1$ and $h(y) = -y$. The constant of integration can be omitted since any solution of the preceding differential equation is satisfactory; we do not require the most general one. Substituting for $h(y)$ in Eq. (17) gives

$$\psi(x, y) = y\sin x + x^2e^y - y.$$

Hence solutions of Eq. (16) are given implicitly by

$$y\sin x + x^2e^y - y = c. \tag{18}$$

EXAMPLE 3

Solve the differential equation

$$(3xy + y^2) + (x^2 + xy)y' = 0. \tag{19}$$

We have

$$M_y(x, y) = 3x + 2y, \qquad N_x(x, y) = 2x + y;$$

since $M_y \neq N_x$, the given equation is not exact. To see that it cannot be solved by the procedure described above, let us seek a function ψ such that

$$\psi_x(x, y) = 3xy + y^2, \qquad \psi_y(x, y) = x^2 + xy. \tag{20}$$

Integrating the first of Eqs. (20) gives

$$\psi(x, y) = \tfrac{3}{2}x^2y + xy^2 + h(y), \tag{21}$$

where h is an arbitrary function of y only. To try to satisfy the second of Eqs. (20), we compute ψ_y from Eq. (21) and set it equal to N, obtaining

$$\tfrac{3}{2}x^2 + 2xy + h'(y) = x^2 + xy$$

or

$$h'(y) = -\tfrac{1}{2}x^2 - xy. \tag{22}$$

Since the right side of Eq. (22) depends on x as well as y, it is impossible to solve Eq. (22) for $h(y)$. Thus there is no $\psi(x, y)$ satisfying both of Eqs. (20).

Integrating Factors. It is sometimes possible to convert a differential equation that is not exact into an exact equation by multiplying the equation by a suitable integrating factor. Recall that this is the procedure that we used in solving linear equations in Section 2.1. To investigate the possibility of implementing this idea more generally, let us multiply the equation

$$M(x, y) + N(x, y)y' = 0 \tag{23}$$

by a function μ and then try to choose μ so that the resulting equation

$$\mu(x, y)M(x, y) + \mu(x, y)N(x, y)y' = 0 \tag{24}$$

is exact. By Theorem 2.6.1, Eq. (24) is exact if and only if

$$(\mu M)_y = (\mu N)_x. \tag{25}$$

Since M and N are given functions, Eq. (25) states that the integrating factor μ must satisfy the first order partial differential equation

$$M\mu_y - N\mu_x + (M_y - N_x)\mu = 0. \tag{26}$$

If a function μ satisfying Eq. (26) can be found, then Eq. (24) will be exact. The solution of Eq. (24) can then be obtained by the method described in the first part of this section. The solution found in this way also satisfies Eq. (23), since the integrating factor μ can be canceled out of Eq. (24).

A partial differential equation of the form (26) may have more than one solution; if this is the case, any such solution may be used as an integrating factor of Eq. (23). This possible nonuniqueness of the integrating factor is illustrated in Example 4.

Unfortunately, Eq. (26), which determines the integrating factor μ, is ordinarily at least as hard to solve as the original equation (23). Therefore, although in principle integrating factors are powerful tools for solving differential equations, in practice they can be found only in special cases. The most important situations in which simple integrating factors can be found occur when μ is a function of only one of the variables x or y, instead of both.

Let us determine conditions on M and N so that Eq. (23) has an integrating factor μ that depends on x only. If we assume that μ is a function of x only, then the partial derivative μ_x reduces to the ordinary derivative $d\mu/dx$ and $\mu_y = 0$. Making these substitutions in Eq. (26), we find that

$$\frac{d\mu}{dx} = \frac{M_y - N_x}{N}\mu. \tag{27}$$

If $(M_y - N_x)/N$ is a function of x only, then there is an integrating factor μ that also depends only on x; further, $\mu(x)$ can be found by solving Eq. (27), which is both linear and separable.

A similar procedure can be used to determine a condition under which Eq. (23) has an integrating factor depending only on y; see Problem 23.

EXAMPLE 4

Find an integrating factor for the equation

$$(3xy + y^2) + (x^2 + xy)y' = 0 \tag{19}$$

and then solve the equation.

In Example 3 we showed that this equation is not exact. Let us determine whether it has an integrating factor that depends on x only. On computing the quantity $(M_y - N_x)/N$, we find that

$$\frac{M_y(x,y) - N_x(x,y)}{N(x,y)} = \frac{3x + 2y - (2x + y)}{x^2 + xy} = \frac{1}{x}. \tag{28}$$

Thus there is an integrating factor μ that is a function of x only, and it satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{d\mu}{dx} = \frac{\mu}{x}. \tag{29}$$

Hence

$$\mu(x) = x. \tag{30}$$

Multiplying Eq. (19) by this integrating factor, we obtain

$$(3x^2y + xy^2) + (x^3 + x^2y)y' = 0. \tag{31}$$

Equation (31) is exact, since

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial y}(3x^2y + xy^2) = 3x^2 + 2xy = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(x^3 + x^2y).$$

Thus there is a function ψ such that

$$\psi_x(x,y) = 3x^2y + xy^2, \qquad \psi_y(x,y) = x^3 + x^2y. \tag{32}$$

Integrating the first of Eqs. (32), we obtain

$$\psi(x,y) = x^3y + \tfrac{1}{2}x^2y^2 + h(y).$$

Substituting this expression for $\psi(x,y)$ in the second of Eqs. (32), we find that

$$x^3 + x^2y + h'(y) = x^3 + x^2y,$$

so $h'(y) = 0$ and $h(y)$ is a constant. Thus the solutions of Eq. (31), and hence of Eq. (19), are given implicitly by

$$x^3y + \tfrac{1}{2}x^2y^2 = c. \tag{33}$$

Solutions may also be found in explicit form since Eq. (33) is quadratic in y.

You may also verify that a second integrating factor for Eq. (19) is

$$\mu(x,y) = \frac{1}{xy(2x + y)}$$

and that the same solution is obtained, though with much greater difficulty, if this integrating factor is used (see Problem 32).

PROBLEMS

Determine whether each of the equations in Problems 1 through 12 is exact. If it is exact, find the solution.

1. $(2x+3)+(2y-2)y'=0$
2. $(2x+4y)+(2x-2y)y'=0$
3. $(3x^2-2xy+2)+(6y^2-x^2+3)y'=0$
4. $(2xy^2+2y)+(2x^2y+2x)y'=0$
5. $\dfrac{dy}{dx}=-\dfrac{ax+by}{bx+cy}$
6. $\dfrac{dy}{dx}=-\dfrac{ax-by}{bx-cy}$
7. $(e^x\sin y-2y\sin x)+(e^x\cos y+2\cos x)y'=0$
8. $(e^x\sin y+3y)-(3x-e^x\sin y)y'=0$
9. $(ye^{xy}\cos 2x-2e^{xy}\sin 2x+2x)+(xe^{xy}\cos 2x-3)y'=0$
10. $(y/x+6x)+(\ln x-2)y'=0,\qquad x>0$
11. $(x\ln y+xy)+(y\ln x+xy)y'=0;\qquad x>0,\quad y>0$
12. $\dfrac{x}{(x^2+y^2)^{3/2}}+\dfrac{y}{(x^2+y^2)^{3/2}}\dfrac{dy}{dx}=0$

In each of Problems 13 and 14, solve the given initial value problem and determine at least approximately where the solution is valid.

13. $(2x-y)+(2y-x)y'=0,\qquad y(1)=3$
14. $(9x^2+y-1)-(4y-x)y'=0,\qquad y(1)=0$

In each of Problems 15 and 16, find the value of b for which the given equation is exact, and then solve it using that value of b.

15. $(xy^2+bx^2y)+(x+y)x^2y'=0$
16. $(ye^{2xy}+x)+bxe^{2xy}y'=0$
17. Assume that Eq. (6) meets the requirements of Theorem 2.6.1 in a rectangle R and is therefore exact. Show that a possible function $\psi(x,y)$ is

$$\psi(x,y)=\int_{x_0}^{x}M(s,y_0)\,ds+\int_{y_0}^{y}N(x,t)\,dt,$$

where (x_0,y_0) is a point in R.

18. Show that any separable equation

$$M(x)+N(y)y'=0$$

is also exact.

In each of Problems 19 through 22, show that the given equation is not exact but becomes exact when multiplied by the given integrating factor. Then solve the equation.

19. $x^2y^3+x(1+y^2)y'=0,\qquad \mu(x,y)=1/xy^3$
20. $\left(\dfrac{\sin y}{y}-2e^{-x}\sin x\right)+\left(\dfrac{\cos y+2e^{-x}\cos x}{y}\right)y'=0,\qquad \mu(x,y)=ye^x$
21. $y+(2x-ye^y)y'=0,\qquad \mu(x,y)=y$
22. $(x+2)\sin y+(x\cos y)y'=0,\qquad \mu(x,y)=xe^x$
23. Show that if $(N_x-M_y)/M=Q$, where Q is a function of y only, then the differential equation

$$M+Ny'=0$$

has an integrating factor of the form

$$\mu(y)=\exp\int Q(y)\,dy.$$

24. Show that if $(N_x - M_y)/(xM - yN) = R$, where R depends on the quantity xy only, then the differential equation

$$M + Ny' = 0$$

has an integrating factor of the form $\mu(xy)$. Find a general formula for this integrating factor.

In each of Problems 25 through 31, find an integrating factor and solve the given equation.

25. $(3x^2y + 2xy + y^3) + (x^2 + y^2)y' = 0$
26. $y' = e^{2x} + y - 1$
27. $1 + (x/y - \sin y)y' = 0$
28. $y + (2xy - e^{-2y})y' = 0$
29. $e^x + (e^x \cot y + 2y \csc y)y' = 0$
30. $[4(x^3/y^2) + (3/y)] + [3(x/y^2) + 4y]y' = 0$
31. $\left(3x + \dfrac{6}{y}\right) + \left(\dfrac{x^2}{y} + 3\dfrac{y}{x}\right)\dfrac{dy}{dx} = 0$

    Hint: See Problem 24.
32. Solve the differential equation

$$(3xy + y^2) + (x^2 + xy)y' = 0$$

using the integrating factor $\mu(x, y) = [xy(2x + y)]^{-1}$. Verify that the solution is the same as that obtained in Example 4 with a different integrating factor.

2.7 Numerical Approximations: Euler's Method

Recall two important facts about the first order initial value problem

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y), \qquad y(t_0) = y_0. \tag{1}$$

First, if f and $\partial f/\partial y$ are continuous, then the initial value problem (1) has a unique solution $y = \phi(t)$ in some interval surrounding the initial point $t = t_0$. Second, it is usually not possible to find the solution ϕ by symbolic manipulations of the differential equation. Up to now we have considered the main exceptions to the latter statement: differential equations that are linear, separable, or exact, or that can be transformed into one of these types. Nevertheless, it remains true that solutions of the vast majority of first order initial value problems cannot be found by analytical means, such as those considered in the first part of this chapter.

Therefore, it is important to be able to approach the problem in other ways. As we have already seen, one of these ways is to draw a direction field for the differential equation (which does not involve solving the equation) and then to visualize the behavior of solutions from the direction field. This has the advantage of being a relatively simple process, even for complicated differential equations. However, it does not lend itself to quantitative computations or comparisons, and this is often a critical shortcoming.

For example, Figure 2.7.1 shows a direction field for the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = 3 - 2t - 0.5y. \tag{2}$$

CHAPTER

3

Second Order Linear Equations

Linear equations of second order are of crucial importance in the study of differential equations for two main reasons. The first is that linear equations have a rich theoretical structure that underlies a number of systematic methods of solution. Further, a substantial portion of this structure and of these methods is understandable at a fairly elementary mathematical level. In order to present the key ideas in the simplest possible context, we describe them in this chapter for second order equations. Another reason to study second order linear equations is that they are vital to any serious investigation of the classical areas of mathematical physics. One cannot go very far in the development of fluid mechanics, heat conduction, wave motion, or electromagnetic phenomena without finding it necessary to solve second order linear differential equations. As an example, we discuss the oscillations of some basic mechanical and electrical systems at the end of the chapter.

3.1 Homogeneous Equations with Constant Coefficients

A second order ordinary differential equation has the form

$$\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = f\left(t, y, \frac{dy}{dt}\right), \tag{1}$$

where f is some given function. Usually, we will denote the independent variable by t since time is often the independent variable in physical problems, but sometimes we will use x instead. We will use y, or occasionally some other letter, to designate the dependent variable. Equation (1) is said to be **linear** if the function f

has the form

$$f\left(t, y, \frac{dy}{dt}\right) = g(t) - p(t)\frac{dy}{dt} - q(t)y, \tag{2}$$

that is, if f is linear in y and dy/dt. In Eq. (2) g, p, and q are specified functions of the independent variable t but do not depend on y. In this case we usually rewrite Eq. (1) as

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{3}$$

where the primes denote differentiation with respect to t. Instead of Eq. (3), we often see the equation

$$P(t)y'' + Q(t)y' + R(t)y = G(t). \tag{4}$$

Of course, if $P(t) \neq 0$, we can divide Eq. (4) by $P(t)$ and thereby obtain Eq. (3) with

$$p(t) = \frac{Q(t)}{P(t)}, \qquad q(t) = \frac{R(t)}{P(t)}, \qquad g(t) = \frac{G(t)}{P(t)}. \tag{5}$$

In discussing Eq. (3) and in trying to solve it, we will restrict ourselves to intervals in which p, q, and g are continuous functions.[1]

If Eq. (1) is not of the form (3) or (4), then it is called **nonlinear**. Analytical investigations of nonlinear equations are relatively difficult, so we will have little to say about them in this book. Numerical or geometical approaches are often more appropriate, and these are discussed in Chapters 8 and 9.

An initial value problem consists of a differential equation such as Eq. (1), (3), or (4) together with a pair of initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \qquad y'(t_0) = y'_0, \tag{6}$$

where y_0 and y'_0 are given numbers prescribing values for y and y' at the initial point t_0. Observe that the initial conditions for a second order equation identify not only a particular point (t_0, y_0) through which the graph of the solution must pass, but also the slope y'_0 of the graph at that point. It is reasonable to expect that two initial conditions are needed for a second order equation because, roughly speaking, two integrations are required to find a solution and each integration introduces an arbitrary constant. Presumably, two initial conditions will suffice to determine values for these two constants.

A second order linear equation is said to be **homogeneous** if the term $g(t)$ in Eq. (3), or the term $G(t)$ in Eq. (4), is zero for all t. Otherwise, the equation is called **nonhomogeneous**. As a result, the term $g(t)$, or $G(t)$, is sometimes called the nonhomogeneous term. We begin our discussion with homogeneous equations, which we will write in the form

$$P(t)y'' + Q(t)y' + R(t)y = 0. \tag{7}$$

Later, in Sections 3.5 and 3.6, we will show that once the homogeneous equation has been solved, it is always possible to solve the corresponding nonhomogeneous

[1]There is a corresponding treatment of higher order linear equations in Chapter 4. If you wish, you may read the appropriate parts of Chapter 4 in parallel with Chapter 3.

equation (4), or at least to express the solution in terms of an integral. Thus the problem of solving the homogeneous equation is the more fundamental one.

In this chapter we will concentrate our attention on equations in which the functions P, Q, and R are constants. In this case, Eq. (7) becomes

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \tag{8}$$

where a, b, and c are given constants. It turns out that Eq. (8) can always be solved easily in terms of the elementary functions of calculus. On the other hand, it is usually much more difficult to solve Eq. (7) if the coefficients are not constants, and a treatment of that case is deferred until Chapter 5. Before taking up Eq. (8), let us first gain some experience by looking at a simple example that in many ways is typical.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the equation

$$y'' - y = 0, \tag{9}$$

and also find the solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 2, \qquad y'(0) = -1. \tag{10}$$

Observe that Eq. (9) is just Eq. (8) with $a = 1, b = 0,$ and $c = -1$. In words, Eq. (9) says that we seek a function with the property that the second derivative of the function is the same as the function itself. Do any of the functions that you studied in calculus have this property? A little thought will probably produce at least one such function, namely, $y_1(t) = e^t$, the exponential function. A little more thought may also produce a second function, $y_2(t) = e^{-t}$. Some further experimentation reveals that constant multiples of these two solutions are also solutions. For example, the functions $2e^t$ and $5e^{-t}$ also satisfy Eq. (9), as you can verify by calculating their second derivatives. In the same way, the functions $c_1y_1(t) = c_1e^t$ and $c_2y_2(t) = c_2e^{-t}$ satisfy the differential equation (9) for all values of the constants c_1 and c_2.

Next, it is vital to notice that the sum of any two solutions of Eq. (9) is also a solution. In particular, since $c_1y_1(t)$ and $c_2y_2(t)$ are solutions of Eq. (9) for any values of c_1 and c_2, so is the function

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) = c_1e^t + c_2e^{-t}. \tag{11}$$

Again, this can be verified by calculating the second derivative y'' from Eq. (11). We have $y' = c_1e^t - c_2e^{-t}$ and $y'' = c_1e^t + c_2e^{-t}$; thus y'' is the same as y, and Eq. (9) is satisfied.

Let us summarize what we have done so far in this example. Once we notice that the functions $y_1(t) = e^t$ and $y_2(t) = e^{-t}$ are solutions of Eq. (9), it follows that the general linear combination (11) of these functions is also a solution. Since the coefficients c_1 and c_2 in Eq. (11) are arbitrary, this expression represents an infinite family of solutions of the differential equation (9).

It is now possible to consider how to pick out a particular member of this infinite family of solutions that also satisfies a given set of initial conditions (10). In other words, we seek the solution that passes through the point $(0, 2)$ and at that point has the slope -1. First, we set $t = 0$ and $y = 2$ in Eq. (11); this gives the equation

$$c_1 + c_2 = 2. \tag{12}$$

Next, we differentiate Eq. (11) with the result that

$$y' = c_1e^t - c_2e^{-t}.$$

Then, setting $t = 0$ and $y' = -1$, we obtain

$$c_1 - c_2 = -1. \tag{13}$$

By solving Eqs. (12) and (13) simultaneously for c_1 and c_2, we find that

$$c_1 = \tfrac{1}{2}, \qquad c_2 = \tfrac{3}{2}. \tag{14}$$

Finally, inserting these values in Eq. (11), we obtain

$$y = \tfrac{1}{2}e^t + \tfrac{3}{2}e^{-t}, \tag{15}$$

the solution of the initial value problem consisting of the differential equation (9) and the initial conditions (10).

What conclusions can we draw from the preceding example that will help us to deal with the more general equation (8),

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0,$$

whose coefficients a, b, and c are arbitrary (real) constants? In the first place, in the example the solutions were exponential functions. Further, once we had identified two solutions, we were able to use a linear combination of them to satisfy the given initial conditions as well as the differential equation itself.

It turns out that by exploiting these two ideas, we can solve Eq. (8) for any values of its coefficients and also satisfy any given set of initial conditions for y and y'. We start by seeking exponential solutions of the form $y = e^{rt}$, where r is a parameter to be determined. Then it follows that $y' = re^{rt}$ and $y'' = r^2e^{rt}$. By substituting these expressions for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (8), we obtain

$$(ar^2 + br + c)e^{rt} = 0,$$

or, since $e^{rt} \neq 0$,

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0. \tag{16}$$

Equation (16) is called the **characteristic equation** for the differential equation (8). Its significance lies in the fact that if r is a root of the polynomial equation (16), then $y = e^{rt}$ is a solution of the differential equation (8). Since Eq. (16) is a quadratic equation with real coefficients, it has two roots, which may be real and different, real but repeated, or complex conjugates. We consider the first case here and the latter two cases in Sections 3.3 and 3.4.

Assuming that the roots of the characteristic equation (16) are real and different, let them be denoted by r_1 and r_2, where $r_1 \neq r_2$. Then $y_1(t) = e^{r_1t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{r_2t}$ are two solutions of Eq. (8). Just as in Example 1, it now follows that

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) = c_1e^{r_1t} + c_2e^{r_2t} \tag{17}$$

is also a solution of Eq. (8). To verify that this is so, we can differentiate the expression in Eq. (17); hence

$$y' = c_1r_1e^{r_1t} + c_2r_2e^{r_2t} \tag{18}$$

and

$$y'' = c_1r_1^2e^{r_1t} + c_2r_2^2e^{r_2t}. \tag{19}$$

Substituting these expressions for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (8) and rearranging terms, we obtain

$$ay'' + by' + cy = c_1(ar_1^2 + br_1 + c)e^{r_1 t} + c_2(ar_2^2 + br_2 + c)e^{r_2 t}. \tag{20}$$

The quantities in the two sets of parentheses on the right-hand side of Eq. (20) are zero because r_1 and r_2 are roots of Eq. (16); therefore, y as given by Eq. (17) is indeed a solution of Eq. (8), as we wished to verify.

Now suppose that we want to find the particular member of the family of solutions (17) that satisfies the initial conditions (6)

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \qquad y'(t_0) = y_0'.$$

By substituting $t = t_0$ and $y = y_0$ in Eq. (17), we obtain

$$c_1 e^{r_1 t_0} + c_2 e^{r_2 t_0} = y_0. \tag{21}$$

Similarly, setting $t = t_0$ and $y' = y_0'$ in Eq. (18) gives

$$c_1 r_1 e^{r_1 t_0} + c_2 r_2 e^{r_2 t_0} = y_0'. \tag{22}$$

On solving Eqs. (21) and (22) simultaneously for c_1 and c_2, we find that

$$c_1 = \frac{y_0' - y_0 r_2}{r_1 - r_2} e^{-r_1 t_0}, \qquad c_2 = \frac{y_0 r_1 - y_0'}{r_1 - r_2} e^{-r_2 t_0}. \tag{23}$$

Recall that $r_1 - r_2 \neq 0$ so that the expressions in Eq. (23) always make sense. Thus, no matter what initial conditions are assigned—that is, regardless of the values of t_0, y_0, and y_0' in Eqs. (6)—it is always possible to determine c_1 and c_2 so that the initial conditions are satisfied. Moreover, there is only one possible choice of c_1 and c_2 for each set of initial conditions. With the values of c_1 and c_2 given by Eq. (23), the expression (17) is the solution of the initial value problem

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \qquad y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0'. \tag{24}$$

It is possible to show, on the basis of the fundamental theorem cited in the next section, that all solutions of Eq. (8) are included in the expression (17), at least for the case in which the roots of Eq. (16) are real and different. Therefore, we call Eq. (17) the general solution of Eq. (8). The fact that any possible initial conditions can be satisfied by the proper choice of the constants in Eq. (17) makes more plausible the idea that this expression does include all solutions of Eq. (8).

Let us now look at some further examples.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the general solution of

$$y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0. \tag{25}$$

We assume that $y = e^{rt}$, and it then follows that r must be a root of the characteristic equation

$$r^2 + 5r + 6 = (r + 2)(r + 3) = 0.$$

Thus the possible values of r are $r_1 = -2$ and $r_2 = -3$; the general solution of Eq. (25) is

$$y = c_1 e^{-2t} + c_2 e^{-3t}. \tag{26}$$

EXAMPLE 3

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 3. \tag{27}$$

The general solution of the differential equation was found in Example 2 and is given by Eq. (26). To satisfy the first initial condition, we set $t = 0$ and $y = 2$ in Eq. (26); thus c_1 and c_2 must satisfy

$$c_1 + c_2 = 2. \tag{28}$$

To use the second initial condition, we must first differentiate Eq. (26). This gives $y' = -2c_1e^{-2t} - 3c_2e^{-3t}$. Then, setting $t = 0$ and $y' = 3$, we obtain

$$-2c_1 - 3c_2 = 3. \tag{29}$$

By solving Eqs. (28) and (29), we find that $c_1 = 9$ and $c_2 = -7$. Using these values in the expression (26), we obtain the solution

$$y = 9e^{-2t} - 7e^{-3t} \tag{30}$$

of the initial value problem (27). The graph of the solution is shown in Figure 3.1.1.

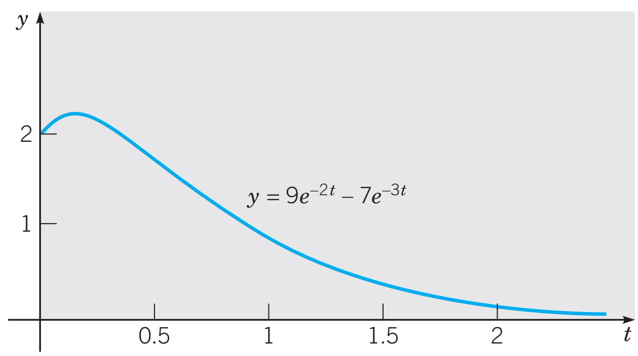


FIGURE 3.1.1 Solution of the initial value problem (27): $y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0,\ y(0) = 2,\ y'(0) = 3$.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$4y'' - 8y' + 3y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \tfrac{1}{2}. \tag{31}$$

If $y = e^{rt}$, then we obtain the characteristic equation

$$4r^2 - 8r + 3 = 0$$

whose roots are $r = 3/2$ and $r = 1/2$. Therefore, the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y = c_1e^{3t/2} + c_2e^{t/2}. \tag{32}$$

Applying the initial conditions, we obtain the following two equations for c_1 and c_2:

$$c_1 + c_2 = 2, \qquad \tfrac{3}{2}c_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}c_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}.$$

The solution of these equations is $c_1 = -\frac{1}{2}$, $c_2 = \frac{5}{2}$, so the solution of the initial value problem (31) is

$$y = -\tfrac{1}{2}e^{3t/2} + \tfrac{5}{2}e^{t/2}. \tag{33}$$

Figure 3.1.2 shows the graph of the solution.

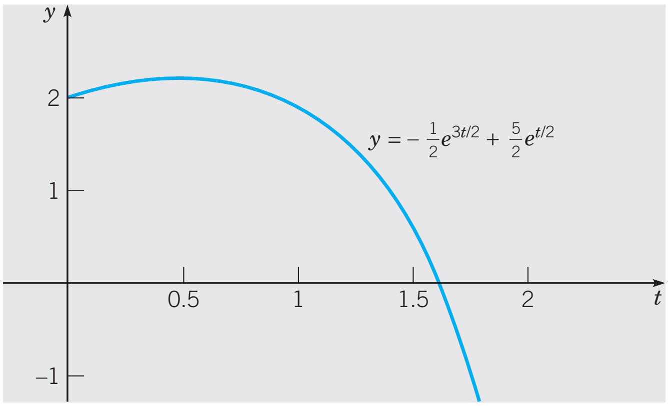


FIGURE 3.1.2 Solution of the initial value problem (31):
$4y'' - 8y' + 3y = 0,\quad y(0) = 2,\quad y'(0) = 0.5.$

EXAMPLE 5

The solution (30) of the initial value problem (27) initially increases (because its initial slope is positive) but eventually approaches zero (because both terms involve negative exponential functions). Therefore, the solution must have a maximum point, and the graph in Figure 3.1.1 confirms this. Determine the location of this maximum point.

The coordinates of the maximum point can be estimated from the graph, but to find them more precisely, we seek the point where the solution has a horizontal tangent line. By differentiating the solution (30), $y = 9e^{-2t} - 7e^{-3t}$, with respect to t, we obtain

$$y' = -18e^{-2t} + 21e^{-3t}. \tag{34}$$

Setting y' equal to zero and multiplying by e^{3t}, we find that the critical value t_m satisfies $e^t = 7/6$; hence

$$t_m = \ln(7/6) \cong 0.15415. \tag{35}$$

The corresponding maximum value y_m is given by

$$y_m = 9e^{-2t_m} - 7e^{-3t_m} = \frac{108}{49} \cong 2.20408. \tag{36}$$

In this example the initial slope is 3, but the solution of the given differential equation behaves in a similar way for any other positive initial slope. In Problem 26 you are asked to determine how the coordinates of the maximum point depend on the initial slope.

Returning to the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$ with arbitrary coefficients, recall that when $r_1 \neq r_2$, its general solution (17) is the sum of two exponential functions. Therefore, the solution has a relatively simple geometrical behavior: as t increases, the magnitude of the solution either tends to zero (when both exponents are negative) or else grows rapidly (when at least one exponent is positive). These two cases are illustrated by the solutions of Examples 3 and 4, which are shown in Figures 3.1.1 and 3.1.2, respectively. There is also a third case that occurs less often: the solution approaches a constant when one exponent is zero and the other is negative.

In Sections 3.3 and 3.4, respectively, we return to the problem of solving the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$ when the roots of the characteristic equation either are complex conjugates or are real and equal. In the meantime, in Section 3.2, we provide a systematic discussion of the mathematical structure of the solutions of all second order linear homogeneous equations.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 8, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y'' + 2y' - 3y = 0$
2. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = 0$
3. $6y'' - y' - y = 0$
4. $2y'' - 3y' + y = 0$
5. $y'' + 5y' = 0$
6. $4y'' - 9y = 0$
7. $y'' - 9y' + 9y = 0$
8. $y'' - 2y' - 2y = 0$

In each of Problems 9 through 16, find the solution of the given initial value problem. Sketch the graph of the solution and describe its behavior as t increases.

9. $y'' + y' - 2y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 1$
10. $y'' + 4y' + 3y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$
11. $6y'' - 5y' + y = 0, \quad y(0) = 4, \quad y'(0) = 0$
12. $y'' + 3y' = 0, \quad y(0) = -2, \quad y'(0) = 3$
13. $y'' + 5y' + 3y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$
14. $2y'' + y' - 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$
15. $y'' + 8y' - 9y = 0, \quad y(1) = 1, \quad y'(1) = 0$
16. $4y'' - y = 0, \quad y(-2) = 1, \quad y'(-2) = -1$
17. Find a differential equation whose general solution is $y = c_1e^{2t} + c_2e^{-3t}$.
18. Find a differential equation whose general solution is $y = c_1e^{-t/2} + c_2e^{-2t}$.
19. Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' - y = 0, \qquad y(0) = \tfrac{5}{4}, \quad y'(0) = -\tfrac{3}{4}.$$

Plot the solution for $0 \le t \le 2$ and determine its minimum value.

20. Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$2y'' - 3y' + y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \tfrac{1}{2}.$$

Then determine the maximum value of the solution and also find the point where the solution is zero.

21. Solve the initial value problem $y'' - y' - 2y = 0$, $y(0) = \alpha$, $y'(0) = 2$. Then find α so that the solution approaches zero as $t \to \infty$.
22. Solve the initial value problem $4y'' - y = 0$, $y(0) = 2$, $y'(0) = \beta$. Then find β so that the solution approaches zero as $t \to \infty$.

In each of Problems 23 and 24, determine the values of α, if any, for which all solutions tend to zero as $t \to \infty$; also determine the values of α, if any, for which all (nonzero) solutions become unbounded as $t \to \infty$.

23. $y'' - (2\alpha - 1)y' + \alpha(\alpha - 1)y = 0$
24. $y'' + (3 - \alpha)y' - 2(\alpha - 1)y = 0$
25. Consider the initial value problem

$$2y'' + 3y' - 2y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = -\beta,$$

where $\beta > 0$.

(a) Solve the initial value problem.

(b) Plot the solution when $\beta = 1$. Find the coordinates (t_0, y_0) of the minimum point of the solution in this case.

(c) Find the smallest value of β for which the solution has no minimum point.

26. Consider the initial value problem (see Example 5)

$$y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \beta,$$

where $\beta > 0$.

(a) Solve the initial value problem.

(b) Determine the coordinates t_m and y_m of the maximum point of the solution as functions of β.

(c) Determine the smallest value of β for which $y_m \geq 4$.

(d) Determine the behavior of t_m and y_m as $\beta \to \infty$.

27. Consider the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = d$, where a, b, c, and d are constants.

(a) Find all equilibrium, or constant, solutions of this differential equation.

(b) Let y_e denote an equilibrium solution, and let $Y = y - y_e$. Thus Y is the deviation of a solution y from an equilibrium solution. Find the differential equation satisfied by Y.

28. Consider the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$, where a, b, and c are constants with $a > 0$. Find conditions on a, b, and c such that the roots of the characteristic equation are:

(a) real, different, and negative.

(b) real with opposite signs.

(c) real, different, and positive.

3.2 Solutions of Linear Homogeneous Equations; the Wronskian

In the preceding section we showed how to solve some differential equations of the form

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0,$$

where a, b, and c are constants. Now we build on those results to provide a clearer picture of the structure of the solutions of all second order linear homogeneous equations. In turn, this understanding will assist us in finding the solutions of other problems that we will encounter later.

To discuss general properties of linear differential equations, it is helpful to introduce a differential operator notation. Let p and q be continuous functions on an open interval I—that is, for $\alpha < t < \beta$. The cases for $\alpha = -\infty$, or $\beta = \infty$, or both, are included. Then, for any function ϕ that is twice differentiable on I, we define the differential operator L by the equation

$$L[\phi] = \phi'' + p\phi' + q\phi. \tag{1}$$

Note that $L[\phi]$ is a function on I. The value of $L[\phi]$ at a point t is

$$L[\phi](t) = \phi''(t) + p(t)\phi'(t) + q(t)\phi(t).$$

For example, if $p(t) = t^2$, $q(t) = 1 + t$, and $\phi(t) = \sin 3t$, then

$$\begin{aligned} L[\phi](t) &= (\sin 3t)'' + t^2(\sin 3t)' + (1 + t)\sin 3t \\ &= -9\sin 3t + 3t^2\cos 3t + (1 + t)\sin 3t. \end{aligned}$$

The operator L is often written as $L = D^2 + pD + q$, where D is the derivative operator.

In this section we study the second order linear homogeneous equation $L[\phi](t) = 0$. Since it is customary to use the symbol y to denote $\phi(t)$, we will usually write this equation in the form

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0. \tag{2}$$

With Eq. (2) we associate a set of initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \qquad y'(t_0) = y_0', \tag{3}$$

where t_0 is any point in the interval I, and y_0 and y_0' are given real numbers. We would like to know whether the initial value problem (2), (3) always has a solution, and whether it may have more than one solution. We would also like to know whether anything can be said about the form and structure of solutions that might be helpful in finding solutions of particular problems. Answers to these questions are contained in the theorems in this section.

The fundamental theoretical result for initial value problems for second order linear equations is stated in Theorem 3.2.1, which is analogous to Theorem 2.4.1 for first order linear equations. The result applies equally well to nonhomogeneous equations, so the theorem is stated in that form.

Theorem 3.2.1 **(Existence and Uniqueness Theorem)**

Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \qquad y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0', \tag{4}$$

where p, q, and g are continuous on an open interval I that contains the point t_0. Then there is exactly one solution $y = \phi(t)$ of this problem, and the solution exists throughout the interval I.

We emphasize that the theorem says three things:

1. The initial value problem *has* a solution; in other words, a solution *exists*.
2. The initial value problem has *only one* solution; that is, the solution is *unique*.
3. The solution ϕ is defined *throughout the interval I* where the coefficients are continuous and is at least twice differentiable there.

For some problems some of these assertions are easy to prove. For instance, we found in Example 1 of Section 3.1 that the initial value problem

$$y'' - y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1 \tag{5}$$

has the solution

$$y = \tfrac{1}{2}e^t + \tfrac{3}{2}e^{-t}. \tag{6}$$

The fact that we found a solution certainly establishes that a solution exists for this initial value problem. Further, the solution (6) is twice differentiable, indeed differentiable any number of times, throughout the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$ where the coefficients in the differential equation are continuous. On the other hand, it is not obvious, and is more difficult to show, that the initial value problem (5) has no solutions other than the one given by Eq. (6). Nevertheless, Theorem 3.2.1 states that this solution is indeed the only solution of the initial value problem (5).

For most problems of the form (4), it is not possible to write down a useful expression for the solution. This is a major difference between first order and second order linear equations. Therefore, all parts of the theorem must be proved by general methods that do not involve having such an expression. The proof of Theorem 3.2.1 is fairly difficult, and we do not discuss it here.[2] We will, however, accept Theorem 3.2.1 as true and make use of it whenever necessary.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the longest interval in which the solution of the initial value problem

$$(t^2 - 3t)y'' + ty' - (t+3)y = 0, \qquad y(1) = 2, \quad y'(1) = 1$$

is certain to exist.

If the given differential equation is written in the form of Eq. (4), then $p(t) = 1/(t-3)$, $q(t) = -(t+3)/t(t-3)$, and $g(t) = 0$. The only points of discontinuity of the coefficients are $t = 0$ and $t = 3$. Therefore, the longest open interval, containing the initial point $t = 1$, in which all the coefficients are continuous is $0 < t < 3$. Thus, this is the longest interval in which Theorem 3.2.1 guarantees that the solution exists.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the unique solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \qquad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where p and q are continuous in an open interval I containing t_0.

The function $y = \phi(t) = 0$ for all t in I certainly satisfies the differential equation and initial conditions. By the uniqueness part of Theorem 3.2.1, it is the only solution of the given problem.

Let us now assume that y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of Eq. (2); in other words,

$$L[y_1] = y_1'' + py_1' + qy_1 = 0,$$

and similarly for y_2. Then, just as in the examples in Section 3.1, we can generate more solutions by forming linear combinations of y_1 and y_2. We state this result as a theorem.

Theorem 3.2.2 **(Principle of Superposition)**

If y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of the differential equation (2),

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0,$$

then the linear combination $c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$ is also a solution for any values of the constants c_1 and c_2.

[2] A proof of Theorem 3.2.1 can be found, for example, in Chapter 6, Section 8 of the book by Coddington listed in the references at the end of this chapter.

A special case of Theorem 3.2.2 occurs if either c_1 or c_2 is zero. Then we conclude that any constant multiple of a solution of Eq. (2) is also a solution.

To prove Theorem 3.2.2, we need only substitute

$$y = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t) \tag{7}$$

for y in Eq. (2). By calculating the indicated derivatives and rearranging terms, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} L[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2] &= [c_1y_1 + c_2y_2]'' + p[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2]' + q[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2] \\ &= c_1y_1'' + c_2y_2'' + c_1py_1' + c_2py_2' + c_1qy_1 + c_2qy_2 \\ &= c_1[y_1'' + py_1' + qy_1] + c_2[y_2'' + py_2' + qy_2] \\ &= c_1L[y_1] + c_2L[y_2]. \end{aligned}$$

Since $L[y_1] = 0$ and $L[y_2] = 0$, it follows that $L[c_1y_1 + c_2y_2] = 0$ also. Therefore, regardless of the values of c_1 and c_2, y as given by Eq. (7) satisfies the differential equation (2), and the proof of Theorem 3.2.2 is complete.

Theorem 3.2.2 states that, beginning with only two solutions of Eq. (2), we can construct an infinite family of solutions by means of Eq. (7). The next question is whether all solutions of Eq. (2) are included in Eq. (7) or whether there may be other solutions of a different form. We begin to address this question by examining whether the constants c_1 and c_2 in Eq. (7) can be chosen so as to satisfy the initial conditions (3). These initial conditions require c_1 and c_2 to satisfy the equations

$$\begin{aligned} c_1y_1(t_0) + c_2y_2(t_0) &= y_0, \\ c_1y_1'(t_0) + c_2y_2'(t_0) &= y_0'. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

The determinant of coefficients of the system (8) is

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_2(t_0) \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix} = y_1(t_0)y_2'(t_0) - y_1'(t_0)y_2(t_0). \tag{9}$$

If $W \neq 0$, then Eqs. (8) have a unique solution (c_1, c_2) regardless of the values of y_0 and y_0'. This solution is given by

$$c_1 = \frac{y_0y_2'(t_0) - y_0'y_2(t_0)}{y_1(t_0)y_2'(t_0) - y_1'(t_0)y_2(t_0)}, \qquad c_2 = \frac{-y_0y_1'(t_0) + y_0'y_1(t_0)}{y_1(t_0)y_2'(t_0) - y_1'(t_0)y_2(t_0)}, \tag{10}$$

or, in terms of determinants,

$$c_1 = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} y_0 & y_2(t_0) \\ y_0' & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_2(t_0) \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix}}, \qquad c_2 = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_0 \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_0' \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_2(t_0) \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix}}. \tag{11}$$

With these values for c_1 and c_2, the linear combination $y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t)$ satisfies the initial conditions (3) as well as the differential equation (2). Note that the denominator in the expressions for c_1 and c_2 is the nonzero determinant W.

On the other hand, if $W = 0$, then the denominators appearing in Eqs. (10) and (11) are zero. In this case Eqs. (8) have no solution unless y_0 and y_0' have values that also make the numerators in Eqs. (10) and (11) equal to zero. Thus, if $W = 0$, there are many initial conditions that cannot be satisfied no matter how c_1 and c_2 are chosen.

The determinant W is called the **Wronskian**[3] **determinant**, or simply the **Wronskian**, of the solutions y_1 and y_2. Sometimes we use the more extended notation $W(y_1, y_2)(t_0)$ to stand for the expression on the right side of Eq. (9), thereby emphasizing that the Wronskian depends on the functions y_1 and y_2, and that it is evaluated at the point t_0. The preceding argument establishes the following result.

Theorem 3.2.3 Suppose that y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of Eq. (2)

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0,$$

and that the initial conditions (3)

$$y(t_0) = y_0, \qquad y'(t_0) = y_0'$$

are assigned. Then it is always possible to choose the constants c_1, c_2 so that

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t)$$

satisfies the differential equation (2) and the initial conditions (3) if and only if the Wronskian

$$W = y_1y_2' - y_1'y_2$$

is not zero at t_0.

EXAMPLE 3

In Example 2 of Section 3.1 we found that $y_1(t) = e^{-2t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{-3t}$ are solutions of the differential equation

$$y'' + 5y' + 6y = 0.$$

Find the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2.

The Wronskian of these two functions is

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} e^{-2t} & e^{-3t} \\ -2e^{-2t} & -3e^{-3t} \end{vmatrix} = -e^{-5t}.$$

Since W is nonzero for all values of t, the functions y_1 and y_2 can be used to construct solutions of the given differential equation, together with initial conditions prescribed at any value of t. One such initial value problem was solved in Example 3 of Section 3.1.

The next theorem justifies the term "general solution" that we introduced in Section 3.1 for the linear combination $c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$.

Theorem 3.2.4 Suppose that y_1 and y_2 are two solutions of the differential equation (2),

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0.$$

Then the family of solutions

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t)$$

with arbitrary coefficients c_1 and c_2 includes every solution of Eq. (2) if and only if there is a point t_0 where the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is not zero.

---

[3] Wronskian determinants are named for Jósef Maria Hoëné-Wronski (1776–1853), who was born in Poland but spent most of his life in France. Wronski was a gifted but troubled man, and his life was marked by frequent heated disputes with other individuals and institutions.

Let ϕ be any solution of Eq. (2). To prove the theorem, we must determine whether ϕ is included in the linear combinations $c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$. That is, we must determine whether there are values of the constants c_1 and c_2 that make the linear combination the same as ϕ. Let t_0 be a point where the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is nonzero. Then evaluate ϕ and ϕ' at this point and call these values y_0 and y_0', respectively; thus

$$y_0 = \phi(t_0), \qquad y_0' = \phi'(t_0).$$

Next, consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \qquad y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0'. \tag{12}$$

The function ϕ is certainly a solution of this initial value problem. Further, because we are assuming that $W(y_1, y_2)(t_0)$ is nonzero, it is possible (by Theorem 3.2.3) to choose c_1 and c_2 such that $y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t)$ is also a solution of the initial value problem (12). In fact, the proper values of c_1 and c_2 are given by Eqs. (10) or (11). The uniqueness part of Theorem 3.2.1 guarantees that these two solutions of the same initial value problem are actually the same function; thus, for the proper choice of c_1 and c_2,

$$\phi(t) = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t), \tag{13}$$

and therefore ϕ is included in the family of functions $c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$. Finally, since ϕ is an *arbitrary* solution of Eq. (2), it follows that *every* solution of this equation is included in this family.

Now suppose that there is no point t_0 where the Wronskian is nonzero. Thus $W(y_1, y_2)(t_0) = 0$ no matter which point t_0 is selected. Then (by Theorem 3.2.3) there are values of y_0 and y_0' such that the system (8) has no solution for c_1 and c_2. Select a pair of such values and choose the solution $\phi(t)$ of Eq. (2) that satisfies the initial condition (3). Observe that such a solution is guaranteed to exist by Theorem 3.2.1. However, this solution is not included in the family $y = c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$. Thus this linear combination does not include all solutions of Eq. (2) if $W(y_1, y_2) = 0$. This completes the proof of Theorem 3.2.4.

Theorem 3.2.4 states that, if and only if the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is not everywhere zero, then the linear combination $c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$ contains all solutions of Eq. (2). It is therefore natural (and we have already done this in the preceding section) to call the expression

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t)$$

with arbitrary constant coefficients the **general solution** of Eq. (2). The solutions y_1 and y_2 are said to form a **fundamental set of solutions** of Eq. (2) if and only if their Wronskian is nonzero.

We can restate the result of Theorem 3.2.4 in slightly different language: to find the general solution, and therefore all solutions, of an equation of the form (2), we need only find two solutions of the given equation whose Wronskian is nonzero. We did precisely this in several examples in Section 3.1, although there we did not calculate the Wronskians. You should now go back and do that, thereby verifying that all the solutions we called "general solutions" in Section 3.1 do satisfy the necessary Wronskian condition. Alternatively, the following example includes all those mentioned in Section 3.1, as well as many other problems of a similar type.

EXAMPLE 4

Suppose that $y_1(t) = e^{r_1 t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{r_2 t}$ are two solutions of an equation of the form (2). Show that they form a fundamental set of solutions if $r_1 \neq r_2$.

We calculate the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2:

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} e^{r_1 t} & e^{r_2 t} \\ r_1 e^{r_1 t} & r_2 e^{r_2 t} \end{vmatrix} = (r_2 - r_1)\exp[(r_1 + r_2)t].$$

Since the exponential function is never zero, and since we are assuming that $r_2 - r_1 \neq 0$, it follows that W is nonzero for every value of t. Consequently, y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions.

EXAMPLE 5

Show that $y_1(t) = t^{1/2}$ and $y_2(t) = t^{-1}$ form a fundamental set of solutions of

$$2t^2 y'' + 3ty' - y = 0, \qquad t > 0. \tag{14}$$

We will show how to solve Eq. (14) later (see Problem 34 in Section 3.3). However, at this stage we can verify by direct substitution that y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the differential equation. Since $y_1'(t) = \frac{1}{2}t^{-1/2}$ and $y_1''(t) = -\frac{1}{4}t^{-3/2}$, we have

$$2t^2(-\tfrac{1}{4}t^{-3/2}) + 3t(\tfrac{1}{2}t^{-1/2}) - t^{1/2} = (-\tfrac{1}{2} + \tfrac{3}{2} - 1)t^{1/2} = 0.$$

Similarly, $y_2'(t) = -t^{-2}$ and $y_2''(t) = 2t^{-3}$, so

$$2t^2(2t^{-3}) + 3t(-t^{-2}) - t^{-1} = (4 - 3 - 1)t^{-1} = 0.$$

Next we calculate the Wronskian W of y_1 and y_2:

$$W = \begin{vmatrix} t^{1/2} & t^{-1} \\ \frac{1}{2}t^{-1/2} & -t^{-2} \end{vmatrix} = -\tfrac{3}{2}t^{-3/2}. \tag{15}$$

Since $W \neq 0$ for $t > 0$, we conclude that y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions there.

In several cases we have been able to find a fundamental set of solutions, and therefore the general solution, of a given differential equation. However, this is often a difficult task, and the question arises as to whether a differential equation of the form (2) always has a fundamental set of solutions. The following theorem provides an affirmative answer to this question.

Theorem 3.2.5

Consider the differential equation (2),

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0,$$

whose coefficients p and q are continuous on some open interval I. Choose some point t_0 in I. Let y_1 be the solution of Eq. (2) that also satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = 1, \qquad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

and let y_2 be the solution of Eq. (2) that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(t_0) = 0, \qquad y'(t_0) = 1.$$

Then y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (2).

First observe that the *existence* of the functions y_1 and y_2 is ensured by the existence part of Theorem 3.2.1. To show that they form a fundamental set of solutions, we need only calculate their Wronskian at t_0:

$$W(y_1, y_2)(t_0) = \begin{vmatrix} y_1(t_0) & y_2(t_0) \\ y_1'(t_0) & y_2'(t_0) \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 1.$$

Since their Wronskian is not zero at the point t_0, the functions y_1 and y_2 do form a fundamental set of solutions, thus completing the proof of Theorem 3.2.5.

Note that the potentially difficult part of this proof, demonstrating the existence of a pair of solutions, is taken care of by reference to Theorem 3.2.1. Note also that Theorem 3.2.5 does not address the question of how to find the solutions y_1 and y_2 by solving the specified initial value problems. Nevertheless, it may be reassuring to know that a fundamental set of solutions always exists.

EXAMPLE 6

Find the fundamental set of solutions y_1 and y_2 specified by Theorem 3.2.5 for the differential equation

$$y'' - y = 0, \tag{16}$$

using the initial point $t_0 = 0$.

In Section 3.1 we noted that two solutions of Eq. (16) are $y_1(t) = e^t$ and $y_2(t) = e^{-t}$. The Wronskian of these solutions is $W(y_1, y_2)(t) = -2 \neq 0$, so they form a fundamental set of solutions. However, they are not the fundamental solutions indicated by Theorem 3.2.5 because they do not satisfy the initial conditions mentioned in that theorem at the point $t = 0$.

To find the fundamental solutions specified by the theorem, we need to find the solutions satisfying the proper initial conditions. Let us denote by $y_3(t)$ the solution of Eq. (16) that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 1, \qquad y'(0) = 0. \tag{17}$$

The general solution of Eq. (16) is

$$y = c_1 e^t + c_2 e^{-t}, \tag{18}$$

and the initial conditions (17) are satisfied if $c_1 = 1/2$ and $c_2 = 1/2$. Thus

$$y_3(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}e^t + \tfrac{1}{2}e^{-t} = \cosh t.$$

Similarly, if $y_4(t)$ satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 0, \qquad y'(0) = 1, \tag{19}$$

then

$$y_4(t) = \tfrac{1}{2}e^t - \tfrac{1}{2}e^{-t} = \sinh t.$$

Since the Wronskian of y_3 and y_4 is

$$W(y_3, y_4)(t) = \cosh^2 t - \sinh^2 t = 1,$$

these functions also form a fundamental set of solutions, as stated by Theorem 3.2.5. Therefore, the general solution of Eq. (16) can be written as

$$y = k_1 \cosh t + k_2 \sinh t, \tag{20}$$

as well as in the form (18). We have used k_1 and k_2 for the arbitrary constants in Eq. (20) because they are not the same as the constants c_1 and c_2 in Eq. (18). One purpose of this example is to make it clear that a given differential equation has more than one fundamental set of solutions; indeed, it has infinitely many; see Problem 21. As a rule, you should choose the set that is most convenient.

In the next section we will encounter equations that have complex-valued solutions. The following theorem is fundamental in dealing with such equations and their solutions.

Theorem 3.2.6 Consider again the equation (2),

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0,$$

where p and q are continuous real-valued functions. If $y = u(t) + iv(t)$ is a complex-valued solution of Eq. (2), then its real part u and its imaginary part v are also solutions of this equation.

To prove this theorem we substitute $u(t) + iv(t)$ for y in $L[y]$, obtaining

$$L[y] = u''(t) + iv''(t) + p(t)[u'(t) + iv'(t)] + q(t)[u(t) + iv(t)]. \tag{21}$$

Then, by separating Eq. (21) into its real and imaginary parts (and this is where we need to know that $p(t)$ and $q(t)$ are real-valued), we find that

$$\begin{aligned} L[y] &= u''(t) + p(t)u'(t) + q(t)u(t) + i[v''(t) + p(t)v'(t) + q(t)v(t)] \\ &= L[u](t) + iL[v](t). \end{aligned}$$

Recall that a complex number is zero if and only if its real and imaginary parts are both zero. We know that $L[y] = 0$ because y is a solution of Eq. (2). Therefore, $L[u](t) = 0$ and $L[v](t) = 0$ also; consequently, u and v are also solutions of Eq. (2), so the theorem is established. We will see examples of the use of Theorem 3.2.6 in Section 3.3.

Incidentally, the complex conjugate $\overline{y}$ of a solution y is also a solution. This is a consequence of Theorem 3.2.2 since $\overline{y} = u(t) - iv(t)$ is a linear combination of two solutions.

Now let us examine further the properties of the Wronskian of two solutions of a second order linear homogeneous differential equation. The following theorem, perhaps surprisingly, gives a simple explicit formula for the Wronskian of any two solutions of any such equation, even if the solutions themselves are not known.

Theorem 3.2.7 **(Abel's Theorem)**[4]

If y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the differential equation

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \tag{22}$$

where p and q are continuous on an open interval I, then the Wronskian $W(y_1, y_2)(t)$ is given by

$$W(y_1, y_2)(t) = c \exp\left[-\int p(t)\, dt\right], \tag{23}$$

where c is a certain constant that depends on y_1 and y_2, but not on t. Further, $W(y_1, y_2)(t)$ either is zero for all t in I (if $c = 0$) or else is never zero in I (if $c \neq 0$).

To prove Abel's theorem, we start by noting that y_1 and y_2 satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} y_1'' + p(t)y_1' + q(t)y_1 &= 0, \\ y_2'' + p(t)y_2' + q(t)y_2 &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

If we multiply the first equation by $-y_2$, multiply the second by y_1, and add the resulting equations, we obtain

$$(y_1 y_2'' - y_1'' y_2) + p(t)(y_1 y_2' - y_1' y_2) = 0. \tag{25}$$

Next, we let $W(t) = W(y_1, y_2)(t)$ and observe that

$$W' = y_1 y_2'' - y_1'' y_2. \tag{26}$$

Then we can write Eq. (25) in the form

$$W' + p(t)W = 0. \tag{27}$$

Equation (27) can be solved immediately since it is both a first order linear equation (Section 2.1) and a separable equation (Section 2.2). Thus

$$W(t) = c \exp\left[-\int p(t)\, dt\right], \tag{28}$$

where c is a constant. The value of c depends on which pair of solutions of Eq. (22) is involved. However, since the exponential function is never zero, $W(t)$ is not zero unless $c = 0$, in which case $W(t)$ is zero for all t. This completes the proof of Theorem 3.2.7.

Note that the Wronskians of any two fundamental sets of solutions of the same differential equation can differ only by a multiplicative constant, and that the Wronskian of any fundamental set of solutions can be determined, up to a multiplicative constant,

[4]The result in Theorem 3.2.7 was derived by the Norwegian mathematician Niels Henrik Abel (1802–1829) in 1827 and is known as Abel's formula. Abel also showed that there is no general formula for solving a quintic, or fifth degree, polynomial equation in terms of explicit algebraic operations on the coefficients, thereby resolving a question that had been open since the sixteenth century. His greatest contributions, however, were in analysis, particularly in the study of elliptic functions. Unfortunately, his work was not widely noticed until after his death. The distinguished French mathematician Legendre called it a "monument more lasting than bronze."

without solving the differential equation. Further, since under the conditions of Theorem 3.2.7 the Wronskian W is either always zero or never zero, you can determine which case actually occurs by evaluating W at any single convenient value of t.

EXAMPLE 7

In Example 5 we verified that $y_1(t) = t^{1/2}$ and $y_2(t) = t^{-1}$ are solutions of the equation

$$2t^2y'' + 3ty' - y = 0, \qquad t > 0. \tag{29}$$

Verify that the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is given by Eq. (23).

From the example just cited we know that $W(y_1, y_2)(t) = -(3/2)t^{-3/2}$. To use Eq. (23), we must write the differential equation (29) in the standard form with the coefficient of y'' equal to 1. Thus we obtain

$$y'' + \frac{3}{2t}y' - \frac{1}{2t^2}y = 0,$$

so $p(t) = 3/2t$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned} W(y_1, y_2)(t) &= c\ \exp\left[-\int \frac{3}{2t}\,dt\right] = c\exp\left(-\frac{3}{2}\ln t\right) \\ &= c\,t^{-3/2}. \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

Equation (30) gives the Wronskian of any pair of solutions of Eq. (29). For the particular solutions given in this example, we must choose $c = -3/2$.

Summary. We can summarize the discussion in this section as follows: to find the general solution of the differential equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \qquad \alpha < t < \beta,$$

we must first find two functions y_1 and y_2 that satisfy the differential equation in $\alpha < t < \beta$. Then we must make sure that there is a point in the interval where the Wronskian W of y_1 and y_2 is nonzero. Under these circumstances y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions, and the general solution is

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t),$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. If initial conditions are prescribed at a point in $\alpha < t < \beta$, then c_1 and c_2 can be chosen so as to satisfy these conditions.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 6, find the Wronskian of the given pair of functions.

1. $e^{2t}, \quad e^{-3t/2}$
2. $\cos t, \quad \sin t$
3. $e^{-2t}, \quad te^{-2t}$
4. $x, \quad xe^x$
5. $e^t \sin t, \quad e^t \cos t$
6. $\cos^2\theta, \quad 1 + \cos 2\theta$

In each of Problems 7 through 12, determine the longest interval in which the given initial value problem is certain to have a unique twice-differentiable solution. Do not attempt to find the solution.

7. $ty'' + 3y = t, \qquad y(1) = 1, \quad y'(1) = 2$
8. $(t-1)y'' - 3ty' + 4y = \sin t, \qquad y(-2) = 2, \quad y'(-2) = 1$
9. $t(t-4)y'' + 3ty' + 4y = 2, \qquad y(3) = 0, \quad y'(3) = -1$
10. $y'' + (\cos t)y' + 3(\ln|t|)y = 0, \qquad y(2) = 3, \quad y'(2) = 1$

11. $(x-3)y'' + xy' + (\ln|x|)y = 0, \qquad y(1) = 0, \quad y'(1) = 1$
12. $(x-2)y'' + y' + (x-2)(\tan x)y = 0, \qquad y(3) = 1, \quad y'(3) = 2$

13. Verify that $y_1(t) = t^2$ and $y_2(t) = t^{-1}$ are two solutions of the differential equation $t^2y'' - 2y = 0$ for $t > 0$. Then show that $y = c_1t^2 + c_2t^{-1}$ is also a solution of this equation for any c_1 and c_2.
14. Verify that $y_1(t) = 1$ and $y_2(t) = t^{1/2}$ are solutions of the differential equation $yy'' + (y')^2 = 0$ for $t > 0$. Then show that $y = c_1 + c_2t^{1/2}$ is not, in general, a solution of this equation. Explain why this result does not contradict Theorem 3.2.2.
15. Show that if $y = \phi(t)$ is a solution of the differential equation $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t)$, where $g(t)$ is not always zero, then $y = c\phi(t)$, where c is any constant other than 1, is not a solution. Explain why this result does not contradict the remark following Theorem 3.2.2.
16. Can $y = \sin(t^2)$ be a solution on an interval containing $t = 0$ of an equation $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$ with continuous coefficients? Explain your answer.
17. If the Wronskian W of f and g is $3e^{4t}$, and if $f(t) = e^{2t}$, find $g(t)$.
18. If the Wronskian W of f and g is t^2e^t, and if $f(t) = t$, find $g(t)$.
19. If $W(f, g)$ is the Wronskian of f and g, and if $u = 2f - g$, $v = f + 2g$, find the Wronskian $W(u, v)$ of u and v in terms of $W(f, g)$.
20. If the Wronskian of f and g is $t\cos t - \sin t$, and if $u = f + 3g$, $v = f - g$, find the Wronskian of u and v.
21. Assume that y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions of $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$ and let $y_3 = a_1y_1 + a_2y_2$ and $y_4 = b_1y_1 + b_2y_2$, where a_1, a_2, b_1, and b_2 are any constants. Show that

$$W(y_3, y_4) = (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)W(y_1, y_2).$$

Are y_3 and y_4 also a fundamental set of solutions? Why or why not?

In each of Problems 22 and 23, find the fundamental set of solutions specified by Theorem 3.2.5 for the given differential equation and initial point.

22. $y'' + y' - 2y = 0, \qquad t_0 = 0$
23. $y'' + 4y' + 3y = 0, \qquad t_0 = 1$

In each of Problems 24 through 27, verify that the functions y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the given differential equation. Do they constitute a fundamental set of solutions?

24. $y'' + 4y = 0; \qquad y_1(t) = \cos 2t, \quad y_2(t) = \sin 2t$
25. $y'' - 2y' + y = 0; \qquad y_1(t) = e^t, \quad y_2(t) = te^t$
26. $x^2y'' - x(x+2)y' + (x+2)y = 0, \quad x > 0; \qquad y_1(x) = x, \quad y_2(x) = xe^x$
27. $(1 - x\cot x)y'' - xy' + y = 0, \quad 0 < x < \pi; \qquad y_1(x) = x, \quad y_2(x) = \sin x$

28. Consider the equation $y'' - y' - 2y = 0$.
    (a) Show that $y_1(t) = e^{-t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{2t}$ form a fundamental set of solutions.
    (b) Let $y_3(t) = -2e^{2t}$, $y_4(t) = y_1(t) + 2y_2(t)$, and $y_5(t) = 2y_1(t) - 2y_3(t)$. Are $y_3(t)$, $y_4(t)$, and $y_5(t)$ also solutions of the given differential equation?
    (c) Determine whether each of the following pairs forms a fundamental set of solutions: $[y_1(t), y_3(t)]$; $[y_2(t), y_3(t)]$; $[y_1(t), y_4(t)]$; $[y_4(t), y_5(t)]$.

In each of Problems 29 through 32, find the Wronskian of two solutions of the given differential equation without solving the equation.

29. $t^2y'' - t(t+2)y' + (t+2)y = 0$
30. $(\cos t)y'' + (\sin t)y' - ty = 0$
31. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0, \qquad$ Bessel's equation
32. $(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha + 1)y = 0, \qquad$ Legendre's equation

33. Show that if p is differentiable and $p(t) > 0$, then the Wronskian $W(t)$ of two solutions of $[p(t)y']' + q(t)y = 0$ is $W(t) = c/p(t)$, where c is a constant.
34. If the differential equation $ty'' + 2y' + te^t y = 0$ has y_1 and y_2 as a fundamental set of solutions and if $W(y_1, y_2)(1) = 2$, find the value of $W(y_1, y_2)(5)$.
35. If the differential equation $t^2y'' - 2y' + (3 + t)y = 0$ has y_1 and y_2 as a fundamental set of solutions and if $W(y_1, y_2)(2) = 3$, find the value of $W(y_1, y_2)(4)$.
36. If the Wronskian of any two solutions of $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$ is constant, what does this imply about the coefficients p and q?
37. If f, g, and h are differentiable functions, show that $W(fg, fh) = f^2W(g, h)$.

In Problems 38 through 40, assume that p and q are continuous and that the functions y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the differential equation $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$ on an open interval I.

38. Prove that if y_1 and y_2 are zero at the same point in I, then they cannot be a fundamental set of solutions on that interval.
39. Prove that if y_1 and y_2 have maxima or minima at the same point in I, then they cannot be a fundamental set of solutions on that interval.
40. Prove that if y_1 and y_2 have a common point of inflection t_0 in I, then they cannot be a fundamental set of solutions on I unless both p and q are zero at t_0.

41. **Exact Equations.** The equation

$$P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0$$

is said to be exact if it can be written in the form

$$[P(x)y']' + [f(x)y]' = 0,$$

where $f(x)$ is to be determined in terms of $P(x)$, $Q(x)$, and $R(x)$. The latter equation can be integrated once immediately, resulting in a first order linear equation for y that can be solved as in Section 2.1. By equating the coefficients of the preceding equations and then eliminating $f(x)$, show that a necessary condition for exactness is

$$P''(x) - Q'(x) + R(x) = 0.$$

It can be shown that this is also a sufficient condition.

In each of Problems 42 through 45, use the result of Problem 41 to determine whether the given equation is exact. If it is, then solve the equation.

42. $y'' + xy' + y = 0$
43. $y'' + 3x^2y' + xy = 0$
44. $xy'' - (\cos x)y' + (\sin x)y = 0, \quad x > 0$
45. $x^2y'' + xy' - y = 0, \quad x > 0$

46. **The Adjoint Equation.** If a second order linear homogeneous equation is not exact, it can be made exact by multiplying by an appropriate integrating factor $\mu(x)$. Thus we require that $\mu(x)$ be such that

$$\mu(x)P(x)y'' + \mu(x)Q(x)y' + \mu(x)R(x)y = 0$$

can be written in the form

$$[\mu(x)P(x)y']' + [f(x)y]' = 0.$$

By equating coefficients in these two equations and eliminating $f(x)$, show that the function μ must satisfy

$$P\mu'' + (2P' - Q)\mu' + (P'' - Q' + R)\mu = 0.$$

This equation is known as the adjoint of the original equation and is important in the advanced theory of differential equations. In general, the problem of solving the adjoint differential equation is as difficult as that of solving the original equation, so only occasionally is it possible to find an integrating factor for a second order equation.

In each of Problems 47 through 49, use the result of Problem 46 to find the adjoint of the given differential equation.

47. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - \nu^2)y = 0,$ Bessel's equation
48. $(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + \alpha(\alpha + 1)y = 0,$ Legendre's equation
49. $y'' - xy = 0,$ Airy's equation
50. For the second order linear equation $P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0$, show that the adjoint of the adjoint equation is the original equation.
51. A second order linear equation $P(x)y'' + Q(x)y' + R(x)y = 0$ is said to be self-adjoint if its adjoint is the same as the original equation. Show that a necessary condition for this equation to be self-adjoint is that $P'(x) = Q(x)$. Determine whether each of the equations in Problems 47 through 49 is self-adjoint.

3.3 Complex Roots of the Characteristic Equation

We continue our discussion of the equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \tag{1}$$

where a, b, and c are given real numbers. In Section 3.1 we found that if we seek solutions of the form $y = e^{rt}$, then r must be a root of the characteristic equation

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0. \tag{2}$$

We showed in Section 3.1 that if the roots r_1 and r_2 are real and different, which occurs whenever the discriminant $b^2 - 4ac$ is positive, then the general solution of Eq. (1) is

$$y = c_1e^{r_1t} + c_2e^{r_2t}. \tag{3}$$

Suppose now that $b^2 - 4ac$ is negative. Then the roots of Eq. (2) are conjugate complex numbers; we denote them by

$$r_1 = \lambda + i\mu, \qquad r_2 = \lambda - i\mu, \tag{4}$$

where λ and μ are real. The corresponding expressions for y are

$$y_1(t) = \exp[(\lambda + i\mu)t], \qquad y_2(t) = \exp[(\lambda - i\mu)t]. \tag{5}$$

Our first task is to explore what is meant by these expressions, which involve evaluating the exponential function for a complex exponent. For example, if $\lambda = -1$, $\mu = 2$, and $t = 3$, then from Eq. (5),

$$y_1(3) = e^{-3+6i}. \tag{6}$$

What does it mean to raise the number e to a complex power? The answer is provided by an important relation known as Euler's formula.

Euler's Formula. To assign a meaning to the expressions in Eqs. (5), we need to give a definition of the complex exponential function. Of course, we want the definition to reduce to the familiar real exponential function when the exponent is real. There are several ways to discover how this extension of the exponential function should be defined. Here we use a method based on infinite series; an alternative is outlined in Problem 28.

Recall from calculus that the Taylor series for e^t about $t = 0$ is

$$e^t = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^n}{n!}, \qquad -\infty < t < \infty. \tag{7}$$

If we now assume that we can substitute it for t in Eq. (7), then we have

$$\begin{aligned} e^{it} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(it)^n}{n!} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n t^{2n}}{(2n)!} + i \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n-1} t^{2n-1}}{(2n-1)!}, \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

where we have separated the sum into its real and imaginary parts, making use of the fact that $i^2 = -1$, $i^3 = -i$, $i^4 = 1$, and so forth. The first series in Eq. (8) is precisely the Taylor series for $\cos t$ about $t = 0$, and the second is the Taylor series for $\sin t$ about $t = 0$. Thus we have

$$e^{it} = \cos t + i \sin t. \tag{9}$$

Equation (9) is known as Euler's formula and is an extremely important mathematical relationship. Although our derivation of Eq. (9) is based on the unverified assumption that the series (7) can be used for complex as well as real values of the independent variable, our intention is to use this derivation only to make Eq. (9) seem plausible. We now put matters on a firm foundation by adopting Eq. (9) as the *definition* of e^{it}. In other words, whenever we write e^{it}, we mean the expression on the right side of Eq. (9).

There are some variations of Euler's formula that are also worth noting. If we replace t by $-t$ in Eq. (9) and recall that $\cos(-t) = \cos t$ and $\sin(-t) = -\sin t$, then we have

$$e^{-it} = \cos t - i \sin t. \tag{10}$$

Further, if t is replaced by μt in Eq. (9), then we obtain a generalized version of Euler's formula, namely,

$$e^{i\mu t} = \cos \mu t + i \sin \mu t. \tag{11}$$

Next, we want to extend the definition of the exponential function to arbitrary complex exponents of the form $(\lambda + i\mu)t$. Since we want the usual properties of the exponential function to hold for complex exponents, we certainly want $\exp[(\lambda + i\mu)t]$ to satisfy

$$e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t} = e^{\lambda t} e^{i\mu t}. \tag{12}$$

Then, substituting for $e^{i\mu t}$ from Eq. (11), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t} &= e^{\lambda t}(\cos \mu t + i \sin \mu t) \\ &= e^{\lambda t} \cos \mu t + i e^{\lambda t} \sin \mu t. \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

We now take Eq. (13) as the definition of $\exp[(\lambda + i\mu)t]$. The value of the exponential function with a complex exponent is a complex number whose real and imaginary parts are given by the terms on the right side of Eq. (13). Observe that the real and imaginary parts of $\exp[(\lambda + i\mu)t]$ are expressed entirely in terms of elementary real-valued functions. For example, the quantity in Eq. (6) has the value

$$e^{-3+6i} = e^{-3} \cos 6 + i e^{-3} \sin 6 \cong 0.0478041 - 0.0139113i.$$

With the definitions (9) and (13), it is straightforward to show that the usual laws of exponents are valid for the complex exponential function. You can also use Eq. (13) to verify that the differentiation formula

$$\frac{d}{dt}(e^{rt}) = re^{rt} \tag{14}$$

holds for complex values of r.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of the differential equation

$$y'' + y' + 9.25y = 0, \tag{15}$$

Also find the solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 2, \qquad y'(0) = 8, \tag{16}$$

and draw its graph.

The characteristic equation for Eq. (15) is

$$r^2 + r + 9.25 = 0$$

so its roots are

$$r_1 = -\tfrac{1}{2} + 3i, \qquad r_2 = -\tfrac{1}{2} - 3i.$$

Therefore, two solutions of Eq. (15) are

$$y_1(t) = \exp\left[\left(-\tfrac{1}{2} + 3i\right)t\right] = e^{-t/2}(\cos 3t + i \sin 3t) \tag{17}$$

and

$$y_2(t) = \exp\left[\left(-\tfrac{1}{2} - 3i\right)t\right] = e^{-t/2}(\cos 3t - i \sin 3t). \tag{18}$$

You can verify that the Wronskian $W(y_1, y_2)(t) = -6ie^{-t}$, which is not zero, so the general solution of Eq. (15) can be expressed as a linear combination of $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$ with arbitrary coefficients.

However, the initial value problem (15), (16) has only real coefficients, and it is often desirable to express the solution of such a problem in terms of real-valued functions. To do this we can make use of Theorem 3.2.6, which states that the real and imaginary parts of a complex-valued solution of Eq. (15) are also solutions of Eq. (15). Thus, starting from either $y_1(t)$ or $y_2(t)$, we obtain

$$u(t) = e^{-t/2}\cos 3t, \qquad v(t) = e^{-t/2}\sin 3t \tag{19}$$

as real-valued solutions[5] of Eq. (15). On calculating the Wronskian of $u(t)$ and $v(t)$, we find that $W(u, v)(t) = 3e^{-t}$, which is not zero; thus $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions, and the general solution of Eq. (15) can be written as

$$y = c_1 u(t) + c_2 v(t) = e^{-t/2}(c_1 \cos 3t + c_2 \sin 3t), \tag{20}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants.

To satisfy the initial conditions (16), we first substitute $t = 0$ and $y = 2$ in Eq. (20) with the result that $c_1 = 2$. Then, by differentiating Eq. (20), setting $t = 0$, and setting $y' = 8$, we obtain $-\frac{1}{2}c_1 + 3c_2 = 8$, so that $c_2 = 3$. Thus the solution of the initial value problem (15), (16) is

$$y = e^{-t/2}(2\cos 3t + 3\sin 3t). \tag{21}$$

The graph of this solution is shown in Figure 3.3.1.

From the graph we see that the solution of this problem is a decaying oscillation. The sine and cosine factors control the oscillatory nature of the solution, and the negative exponential factor in each term causes the magnitude of the oscillations to diminish as time increases.

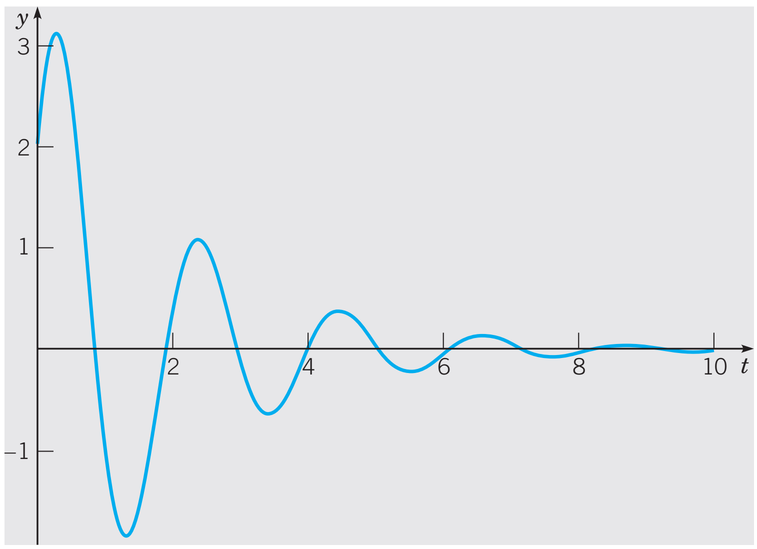


FIGURE 3.3.1 Solution of the initial value problem (15), (16): $y'' + y' + 9.25y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 8.$

Complex Roots; The General Case. The functions $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$, given by Eqs. (5) and with the meaning expressed by Eq. (13), are solutions of Eq. (1) when the roots of the characteristic equation (2) are complex numbers $\lambda \pm i\mu$. However, the solutions y_1 and y_2 are complex-valued functions, whereas in general we would prefer to have

[5]If you are not completely sure that $u(t)$ and $v(t)$ are solutions of the given differential equation, you should substitute these functions into Eq. (15) and confirm that they satisfy it.

real-valued solutions because the differential equation itself has real coefficients. Just as in Example 1, we can use Theorem 3.2.6 to find a fundamental set of real-valued solutions by choosing the real and imaginary parts of either $y_1(t)$ or $y_2(t)$. In this way we obtain the solutions

$$u(t) = e^{\lambda t}\cos\mu t, \qquad v(t) = e^{\lambda t}\sin\mu t. \tag{22}$$

By direct computation you can show that the Wronskian of u and v is

$$W(u, v)(t) = \mu e^{2\lambda t}. \tag{23}$$

Thus, as long as $\mu \neq 0$, the Wronskian W is not zero, so u and v form a fundamental set of solutions. (Of course, if $\mu = 0$, then the roots are real and the discussion in this section is not applicable.) Consequently, if the roots of the characteristic equation are complex numbers $\lambda \pm i\mu$, with $\mu \neq 0$, then the general solution of Eq. (1) is

$$y = c_1 e^{\lambda t}\cos\mu t + c_2 e^{\lambda t}\sin\mu t, \tag{24}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. Note that the solution (24) can be written down as soon as the values of λ and μ are known. Let us now consider some further examples.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$16y'' - 8y' + 145y = 0, \qquad y(0) = -2, \quad y'(0) = 1. \tag{25}$$

The characteristic equation is $16r^2 - 8r + 145 = 0$ and its roots are $r = 1/4 \pm 3i$. Thus the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y = c_1 e^{t/4}\cos 3t + c_2 e^{t/4}\sin 3t. \tag{26}$$

To apply the first initial condition, we set $t = 0$ in Eq. (26); this gives

$$y(0) = c_1 = -2.$$

For the second initial condition, we must differentiate Eq. (26) and then set $t = 0$. In this way we find that

$$y'(0) = \tfrac{1}{4}c_1 + 3c_2 = 1,$$

from which $c_2 = 1/2$. Using these values of c_1 and c_2 in Eq. (26), we obtain

$$y = -2e^{t/4}\cos 3t + \tfrac{1}{2}e^{t/4}\sin 3t \tag{27}$$

as the solution of the initial value problem (25). The graph of this solution is shown in Figure 3.3.2.

In this case we observe that the solution is a growing oscillation. Again the trigonometric factors in Eq. (27) determine the oscillatory part of the solution, while the exponential factor (with a positive exponent this time) causes the magnitude of the oscillation to increase with time.

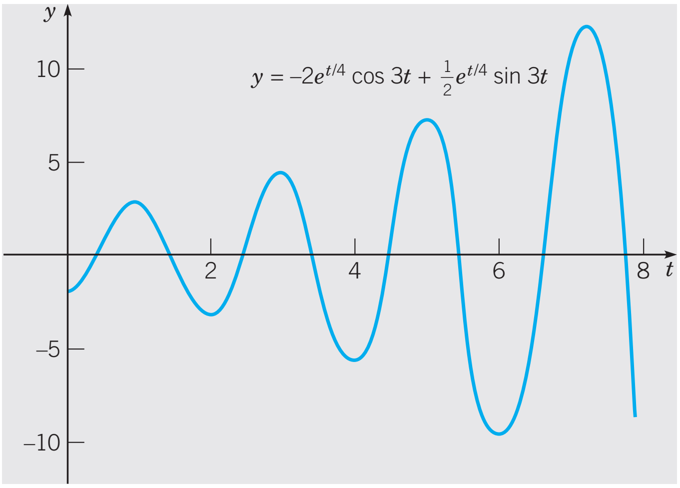


FIGURE 3.3.2 Solution of the initial value problem (25): $16y'' - 8y' + 145y = 0,\quad y(0) = -2,\quad y'(0) = 1.$

EXAMPLE 3

Find the general solution of

$$y'' + 9y = 0. \tag{28}$$

The characteristic equation is $r^2 + 9 = 0$ with the roots $r = \pm 3i$; thus $\lambda = 0$ and $\mu = 3$. The general solution is

$$y = c_1 \cos 3t + c_2 \sin 3t; \tag{29}$$

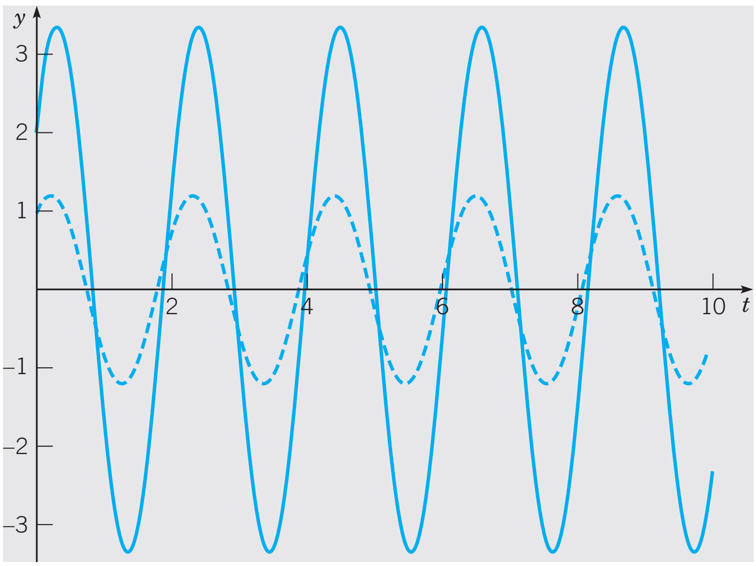


FIGURE 3.3.3 Two typical solutions of Eq. (28): $y'' + 9y = 0$.

note that if the real part of the roots is zero, as in this example, then there is no exponential factor in the solution. Figure 3.3.3 shows the graph of two typical solutions of Eq. (28). In each case the solution is a pure oscillation whose amplitude is determined by the initial conditions. Since there is no exponential factor in the solution (29), the amplitude of each oscillation remains constant in time.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 6, use Euler's formula to write the given expression in the form $a + ib$.

1. $\exp(1 + 2i)$
2. $\exp(2 - 3i)$
3. $e^{i\pi}$
4. $e^{2-(\pi/2)i}$
5. 2^{1-i}
6. π^{-1+2i}

In each of Problems 7 through 16, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

7. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0$
8. $y'' - 2y' + 6y = 0$
9. $y'' + 2y' - 8y = 0$
10. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = 0$
11. $y'' + 6y' + 13y = 0$
12. $4y'' + 9y = 0$
13. $y'' + 2y' + 1.25y = 0$
14. $9y'' + 9y' - 4y = 0$
15. $y'' + y' + 1.25y = 0$
16. $y'' + 4y' + 6.25y = 0$

In each of Problems 17 through 22, find the solution of the given initial value problem. Sketch the graph of the solution and describe its behavior for increasing t.

17. $y'' + 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$
18. $y'' + 4y' + 5y = 0, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$
19. $y'' - 2y' + 5y = 0, \quad y(\pi/2) = 0, \quad y'(\pi/2) = 2$
20. $y'' + y = 0, \quad y(\pi/3) = 2, \quad y'(\pi/3) = -4$
21. $y'' + y' + 1.25y = 0, \quad y(0) = 3, \quad y'(0) = 1$
22. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = 0, \quad y(\pi/4) = 2, \quad y'(\pi/4) = -2$
23. Consider the initial value problem
$$3u'' - u' + 2u = 0, \qquad u(0) = 2, \quad u'(0) = 0.$$
(a) Find the solution $u(t)$ of this problem.
(b) For $t > 0$, find the first time at which $|u(t)| = 10$.
24. Consider the initial value problem
$$5u'' + 2u' + 7u = 0, \qquad u(0) = 2, \quad u'(0) = 1.$$
(a) Find the solution $u(t)$ of this problem.
(b) Find the smallest T such that $|u(t)| \le 0.1$ for all $t > T$.
25. Consider the initial value problem
$$y'' + 2y' + 6y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \alpha \ge 0.$$
(a) Find the solution $y(t)$ of this problem.
(b) Find α such that $y = 0$ when $t = 1$.
(c) Find, as a function of α, the smallest positive value of t for which $y = 0$.
(d) Determine the limit of the expression found in part (c) as $\alpha \to \infty$.

26. Consider the initial value problem

$$y'' + 2ay' + (a^2 + 1)y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0.$$

(a) Find the solution $y(t)$ of this problem.

(b) For $a = 1$ find the smallest T such that $|y(t)| < 0.1$ for $t > T$.

(c) Repeat part (b) for $a = 1/4, 1/2$, and 2.

(d) Using the results of parts (b) and (c), plot T versus a and describe the relation between T and a.

27. Show that $W(e^{\lambda t}\cos\mu t, e^{\lambda t}\sin\mu t) = \mu e^{2\lambda t}$.

28. In this problem we outline a different derivation of Euler's formula.

(a) Show that $y_1(t) = \cos t$ and $y_2(t) = \sin t$ are a fundamental set of solutions of $y'' + y = 0$; that is, show that they are solutions and that their Wronskian is not zero.

(b) Show (formally) that $y = e^{it}$ is also a solution of $y'' + y = 0$. Therefore,

$$e^{it} = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t \tag{i}$$

for some constants c_1 and c_2. Why is this so?

(c) Set $t = 0$ in Eq. (i) to show that $c_1 = 1$.

(d) Assuming that Eq. (14) is true, differentiate Eq. (i) and then set $t = 0$ to conclude that $c_2 = i$. Use the values of c_1 and c_2 in Eq. (i) to arrive at Euler's formula.

29. Using Euler's formula, show that

$$\cos t = (e^{it} + e^{-it})/2, \qquad \sin t = (e^{it} - e^{-it})/2i.$$

30. If e^{rt} is given by Eq. (13), show that $e^{(r_1+r_2)t} = e^{r_1 t}e^{r_2 t}$ for any complex numbers r_1 and r_2.

31. If e^{rt} is given by Eq. (13), show that

$$\frac{d}{dt}e^{rt} = re^{rt}$$

for any complex number r.

32. Consider the differential equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0,$$

where $b^2 - 4ac < 0$ and the characteristic equation has complex roots $\lambda \pm i\mu$. Substitute the functions

$$u(t) = e^{\lambda t}\cos\mu t \quad \text{and} \quad v(t) = e^{\lambda t}\sin\mu t$$

for y in the differential equation and thereby confirm that they are solutions.

33. If the functions y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions of $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$, show that between consecutive zeros of y_1 there is one and only one zero of y_2. Note that this result is illustrated by the solutions $y_1(t) = \cos t$ and $y_2(t) = \sin t$ of the equation $y'' + y = 0$.
Hint: Suppose that t_1 and t_2 are two zeros of y_1 between which there are no zeros of y_2. Apply Rolle's theorem to y_1/y_2 to reach a contradiction.

Change of Variables. Sometimes a differential equation with variable coefficients,

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \tag{i}$$

can be put in a more suitable form for finding a solution by making a change of the independent variable. We explore these ideas in Problems 34 through 46. In particular, in Problem 34 we show that a class of equations known as Euler equations can be transformed into equations with constant coefficients by a simple change of the independent variable. Problems 35 through

42 are examples of this type of equation. Problem 43 determines conditions under which the more general Eq. (i) can be transformed into a differential equation with constant coefficients. Problems 44 through 46 give specific applications of this procedure.

34. **Euler Equations.** An equation of the form

$$t^2\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \alpha t\frac{dy}{dt} + \beta y = 0, \qquad t > 0, \tag{ii}$$

where α and β are real constants, is called an Euler equation.

(a) Let $x = \ln t$ and calculate dy/dt and d^2y/dt^2 in terms of dy/dx and d^2y/dx^2.

(b) Use the results of part (a) to transform Eq. (ii) into

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + (\alpha - 1)\frac{dy}{dx} + \beta y = 0. \tag{iii}$$

Observe that Eq. (iii) has constant coefficients. If $y_1(x)$ and $y_2(x)$ form a fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (iii), then $y_1(\ln t)$ and $y_2(\ln t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (ii).

In each of Problems 35 through 42, use the method of Problem 34 to solve the given equation for $t > 0$.

35. $t^2y'' + ty' + y = 0$
36. $t^2y'' + 4ty' + 2y = 0$
37. $t^2y'' + 3ty' + 1.25y = 0$
38. $t^2y'' - 4ty' - 6y = 0$
39. $t^2y'' - 4ty' + 6y = 0$
40. $t^2y'' - ty' + 5y = 0$
41. $t^2y'' + 3ty' - 3y = 0$
42. $t^2y'' + 7ty' + 10y = 0$

43. In this problem we determine conditions on p and q that enable Eq. (i) to be transformed into an equation with constant coefficients by a change of the independent variable. Let $x = u(t)$ be the new independent variable, with the relation between x and t to be specified later.

(a) Show that

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{dx}{dt}\frac{dy}{dx}, \qquad \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} = \left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}\frac{dy}{dx}.$$

(b) Show that the differential equation (i) becomes

$$\left(\frac{dx}{dt}\right)^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \left(\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + p(t)\frac{dx}{dt}\right)\frac{dy}{dx} + q(t)y = 0. \tag{iv}$$

(c) In order for Eq. (iv) to have constant coefficients, the coefficients of d^2y/dx^2 and of y must be proportional. If $q(t) > 0$, then we can choose the constant of proportionality to be 1; hence

$$x = u(t) = \int [q(t)]^{1/2}\, dt. \tag{v}$$

(d) With x chosen as in part (c), show that the coefficient of dy/dx in Eq. (iv) is also a constant, provided that the expression

$$\frac{q'(t) + 2p(t)q(t)}{2[q(t)]^{3/2}} \tag{vi}$$

is a constant. Thus Eq. (i) can be transformed into an equation with constant coefficients by a change of the independent variable, provided that the function $(q' + 2pq)/q^{3/2}$ is a constant. How must this result be modified if $q(t) < 0$?

In each of Problems 44 through 46, try to transform the given equation into one with constant coefficients by the method of Problem 43. If this is possible, find the general solution of the given equation.

44. $y'' + ty' + e^{-t^2}y = 0, \qquad -\infty < t < \infty$
45. $y'' + 3ty' + t^2y = 0, \qquad -\infty < t < \infty$
46. $ty'' + (t^2 - 1)y' + t^3y = 0, \qquad 0 < t < \infty$

3.4 Repeated Roots; Reduction of Order

In earlier sections we showed how to solve the equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0 \tag{1}$$

when the roots of the characteristic equation

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0 \tag{2}$$

either are real and different or are complex conjugates. Now we consider the third possibility, namely, that the two roots r_1 and r_2 are equal. This case is transitional between the other two and occurs when the discriminant $b^2 - 4ac$ is zero. Then it follows from the quadratic formula that

$$r_1 = r_2 = -b/2a. \tag{3}$$

The difficulty is immediately apparent; both roots yield the same solution

$$y_1(t) = e^{-bt/2a} \tag{4}$$

of the differential equation (1), and it is not obvious how to find a second solution.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the differential equation

$$y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0. \tag{5}$$

The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 + 4r + 4 = (r + 2)^2 = 0,$$

so $r_1 = r_2 = -2$. Therefore, one solution of Eq. (5) is $y_1(t) = e^{-2t}$. To find the general solution of Eq. (5), we need a second solution that is not a constant multiple of y_1. This second solution can be found in several ways (see Problems 20 through 22); here we use a method originated by D'Alembert[6] in the eighteenth century. Recall that since $y_1(t)$ is a solution of Eq. (1), so is $cy_1(t)$ for any constant c. The basic idea is to generalize this observation by replacing c by a

[6]Jean d'Alembert (1717–1783), a French mathematician, was a contemporary of Euler and Daniel Bernoulli and is known primarily for his work in mechanics and differential equations. D'Alembert's principle in mechanics and d'Alembert's paradox in hydrodynamics are named for him, and the wave equation first appeared in his paper on vibrating strings in 1747. In his later years he devoted himself primarily to philosophy and to his duties as science editor of Diderot's *Encyclopédie*.

function $v(t)$ and then trying to determine $v(t)$ so that the product $v(t)y_1(t)$ is also a solution of Eq. (1).

To carry out this program, we substitute $y = v(t)y_1(t)$ in Eq. (5) and use the resulting equation to find $v(t)$. Starting with

$$y = v(t)y_1(t) = v(t)e^{-2t}, \tag{6}$$

we have

$$y' = v'(t)e^{-2t} - 2v(t)e^{-2t} \tag{7}$$

and

$$y'' = v''(t)e^{-2t} - 4v'(t)e^{-2t} + 4v(t)e^{-2t}. \tag{8}$$

By substituting the expressions in Eqs. (6), (7), and (8) in Eq. (5) and collecting terms, we obtain

$$[v''(t) - 4v'(t) + 4v(t) + 4v'(t) - 8v(t) + 4v(t)]e^{-2t} = 0,$$

which simplifies to

$$v''(t) = 0. \tag{9}$$

Therefore,

$$v'(t) = c_1$$

and

$$v(t) = c_1 t + c_2, \tag{10}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. Finally, substituting for $v(t)$ in Eq. (6), we obtain

$$y = c_1 te^{-2t} + c_2 e^{-2t}. \tag{11}$$

The second term on the right side of Eq. (11) corresponds to the original solution $y_1(t) = \exp(-2t)$, but the first term arises from a second solution, namely, $y_2(t) = t\exp(-2t)$. We can verify that these two solutions form a fundamental set by calculating their Wronskian:

$$\begin{aligned} W(y_1, y_2)(t) &= \begin{vmatrix} e^{-2t} & te^{-2t} \\ -2e^{-2t} & (1-2t)e^{-2t} \end{vmatrix} \\ &= e^{-4t} - 2te^{-4t} + 2te^{-4t} = e^{-4t} \neq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$y_1(t) = e^{-2t}, \qquad y_2(t) = te^{-2t} \tag{12}$$

form a fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (5), and the general solution of that equation is given by Eq. (11). Note that both $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$ tend to zero as $t \to \infty$; consequently, all solutions of Eq. (5) behave in this way. The graph of a typical solution is shown in Figure 3.4.1.

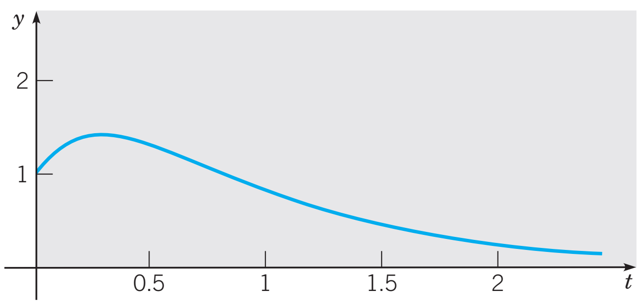


FIGURE 3.4.1 A typical solution of Eq. (5): $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0$.

The procedure used in Example 1 can be extended to a general equation whose characteristic equation has repeated roots. That is, we assume that the coefficients in Eq. (1) satisfy $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, in which case

$$y_1(t) = e^{-bt/2a}$$

is a solution. To find a second solution, we assume that

$$y = v(t)y_1(t) = v(t)e^{-bt/2a} \tag{13}$$

and substitute for y in Eq. (1) to determine $v(t)$. We have

$$y' = v'(t)e^{-bt/2a} - \frac{b}{2a}v(t)e^{-bt/2a} \tag{14}$$

and

$$y'' = v''(t)e^{-bt/2a} - \frac{b}{a}v'(t)e^{-bt/2a} + \frac{b^2}{4a^2}v(t)e^{-bt/2a}. \tag{15}$$

Then, by substituting in Eq. (1), we obtain

$$\left\{a\left[v''(t) - \frac{b}{a}v'(t) + \frac{b^2}{4a^2}v(t)\right] + b\left[v'(t) - \frac{b}{2a}v(t)\right] + cv(t)\right\}e^{-bt/2a} = 0. \tag{16}$$

Canceling the factor $\exp(-bt/2a)$, which is nonzero, and rearranging the remaining terms, we find that

$$av''(t) + (-b+b)v'(t) + \left(\frac{b^2}{4a} - \frac{b^2}{2a} + c\right)v(t) = 0. \tag{17}$$

The term involving $v'(t)$ is obviously zero. Further, the coefficient of $v(t)$ is $c - (b^2/4a)$, which is also zero because $b^2 - 4ac = 0$ in the problem that we are considering. Thus, just as in Example 1, Eq. (17) reduces to

$$v''(t) = 0,$$

so

$$v(t) = c_1 + c_2 t.$$

Hence, from Eq. (13), we have

$$y = c_1 e^{-bt/2a} + c_2 t e^{-bt/2a}. \tag{18}$$

Thus y is a linear combination of the two solutions

$$y_1(t) = e^{-bt/2a}, \qquad y_2(t) = te^{-bt/2a}. \tag{19}$$

The Wronskian of these two solutions is

$$W(y_1, y_2)(t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{-bt/2a} & te^{-bt/2a} \\ -\dfrac{b}{2a}e^{-bt/2a} & \left(1 - \dfrac{bt}{2a}\right)e^{-bt/2a} \end{vmatrix} = e^{-bt/a}. \tag{20}$$

Since $W(y_1, y_2)(t)$ is never zero, the solutions y_1 and y_2 given by Eq. (19) are a fundamental set of solutions. Further, Eq. (18) is the general solution of Eq. (1) when the roots of the characteristic equation are equal. In other words, in this case there is one exponential solution corresponding to the repeated root and a second solution that is obtained by multiplying the exponential solution by t.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' - y' + 0.25y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = \tfrac{1}{3}. \tag{21}$$

The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 - r + 0.25 = 0,$$

so the roots are $r_1 = r_2 = 1/2$. Thus the general solution of the differential equation is

$$y = c_1 e^{t/2} + c_2 t e^{t/2}. \tag{22}$$

The first initial condition requires that

$$y(0) = c_1 = 2.$$

To satisfy the second initial condition, we first differentiate Eq. (22) and then set $t = 0$. This gives

$$y'(0) = \tfrac{1}{2}c_1 + c_2 = \tfrac{1}{3},$$

so $c_2 = -2/3$. Thus the solution of the initial value problem is

$$y = 2e^{t/2} - \tfrac{2}{3}te^{t/2}. \tag{23}$$

The graph of this solution is shown by the blue curve in Figure 3.4.2.

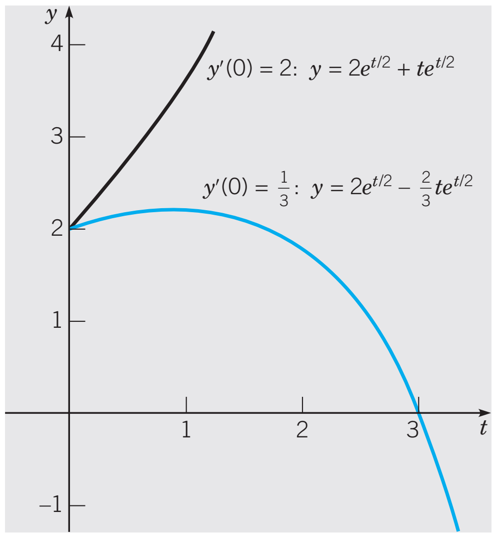


FIGURE 3.4.2 Solutions of $y'' - y' + 0.25y = 0$, $y(0) = 2$, with $y'(0) = 1/3$ (blue curve) and with $y'(0) = 2$ (black curve), respectively.

Let us now modify the initial value problem (21) by changing the initial slope; to be specific, let the second initial condition be $y'(0) = 2$. The solution of this modified problem is

$$y = 2e^{t/2} + te^{t/2},$$

and its graph is shown by the black curve in Figure 3.4.2. The graphs shown in this figure suggest that there is a critical initial slope, with a value between $\frac{1}{3}$ and 2, that separates solutions that grow positively from those that ultimately grow negatively. In Problem 16 you are asked to determine this critical initial slope.

The geometrical behavior of solutions is similar in this case to that when the roots are real and different. If the exponents are either positive or negative, then the magnitude of the solution grows or decays accordingly; the linear factor t has little influence. A decaying solution is shown in Figure 3.4.1 and growing solutions in Figure 3.4.2. However, if the repeated root is zero, then the differential equation is $y'' = 0$ and the general solution is a linear function of t.

Summary. We can now summarize the results that we have obtained for second order linear homogeneous equations with constant coefficients

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0. \tag{1}$$

Let r_1 and r_2 be the roots of the corresponding characteristic equation

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0. \tag{2}$$

If r_1 and r_2 are real but not equal, then the general solution of the differential equation (1) is

$$y = c_1 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 e^{r_2 t}. \tag{24}$$

If r_1 and r_2 are complex conjugates $\lambda \pm i\mu$, then the general solution is

$$y = c_1 e^{\lambda t} \cos \mu t + c_2 e^{\lambda t} \sin \mu t. \tag{25}$$

If $r_1 = r_2$, then the general solution is

$$y = c_1 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 t e^{r_1 t}. \tag{26}$$

Reduction of Order. It is worth noting that the procedure used in this section for equations with constant coefficients is more generally applicable. Suppose that we know one solution $y_1(t)$, not everywhere zero, of

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0. \tag{27}$$

To find a second solution, let

$$y = v(t)y_1(t); \tag{28}$$

then

$$y' = v'(t)y_1(t) + v(t)y_1'(t)$$

and

$$y'' = v''(t)y_1(t) + 2v'(t)y_1'(t) + v(t)y_1''(t).$$

Substituting for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (27) and collecting terms, we find that

$$y_1 v'' + (2y_1' + py_1)v' + (y_1'' + py_1' + qy_1)v = 0. \tag{29}$$

Since y_1 is a solution of Eq. (27), the coefficient of v in Eq. (29) is zero, so that Eq. (29) becomes

$$y_1 v'' + (2y_1' + py_1)v' = 0. \tag{30}$$

Despite its appearance, Eq. (30) is actually a first order equation for the function v' and can be solved either as a first order linear equation or as a separable equation. Once v' has been found, then v is obtained by an integration. Finally, y is determined from Eq. (28). This procedure is called the method of reduction of order, because the crucial step is the solution of a first order differential equation for v' rather than the original second order equation for y. Although it is possible to write down a formula for $v(t)$, we will instead illustrate how this method works by an example.

EXAMPLE 3

Given that $y_1(t) = t^{-1}$ is a solution of

$$2t^2y'' + 3ty' - y = 0, \qquad t > 0, \tag{31}$$

find a fundamental set of solutions.

We set $y = v(t)t^{-1}$; then

$$y' = v't^{-1} - vt^{-2}, \qquad y'' = v''t^{-1} - 2v't^{-2} + 2vt^{-3}.$$

Substituting for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (31) and collecting terms, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 2t^2(v''t^{-1} - 2v't^{-2} + 2vt^{-3}) &+ 3t(v't^{-1} - vt^{-2}) - vt^{-1} \\ &= 2tv'' + (-4+3)v' + (4t^{-1} - 3t^{-1} - t^{-1})v \\ &= 2tv'' - v' = 0. \end{aligned} \tag{32}$$

Note that the coefficient of v is zero, as it should be; this provides a useful check on our algebraic calculations.

If we let $w = v'$, then Eq. (32) becomes

$$2tw' - w = 0.$$

Separating the variables and solving for $w(t)$, we find that

$$w(t) = v'(t) = ct^{1/2};$$

then

$$v(t) = \tfrac{2}{3}ct^{3/2} + k.$$

It follows that

$$y = v(t)t^{-1} = \tfrac{2}{3}ct^{1/2} + kt^{-1}, \tag{33}$$

where c and k are arbitrary constants. The second term on the right side of Eq. (33) is a multiple of $y_1(t)$ and can be dropped, but the first term provides a new solution $y_2(t) = t^{1/2}$. You can verify that the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2 is

$$W(y_1, y_2)(t) = \tfrac{3}{2}t^{-3/2} \neq 0 \quad \text{for} \quad t > 0. \tag{34}$$

Consequently, y_1 and y_2 form a fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (31) for $t > 0$.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 10, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y'' - 2y' + y = 0$
2. $9y'' + 6y' + y = 0$
3. $4y'' - 4y' - 3y = 0$
4. $4y'' + 12y' + 9y = 0$
5. $y'' - 2y' + 10y = 0$
6. $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 0$

7. $4y'' + 17y' + 4y = 0$
8. $16y'' + 24y' + 9y = 0$
9. $25y'' - 20y' + 4y = 0$
10. $2y'' + 2y' + y = 0$

In each of Problems 11 through 14, solve the given initial value problem. Sketch the graph of the solution and describe its behavior for increasing t.

11. $9y'' - 12y' + 4y = 0, \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$
12. $y'' - 6y' + 9y = 0, \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 2$
13. $9y'' + 6y' + 82y = 0, \quad y(0) = -1, \quad y'(0) = 2$
14. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0, \quad y(-1) = 2, \quad y'(-1) = 1$
15. Consider the initial value problem

$$4y'' + 12y' + 9y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = -4.$$

(a) Solve the initial value problem and plot its solution for $0 \le t \le 5$.
(b) Determine where the solution has the value zero.
(c) Determine the coordinates (t_0, y_0) of the minimum point.
(d) Change the second initial condition to $y'(0) = b$ and find the solution as a function of b. Then find the critical value of b that separates solutions that always remain positive from those that eventually become negative.

16. Consider the following modification of the initial value problem in Example 2:

$$y'' - y' + 0.25y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = b.$$

Find the solution as a function of b, and then determine the critical value of b that separates solutions that grow positively from those that eventually grow negatively.

17. Consider the initial value problem

$$4y'' + 4y' + y = 0, \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 2.$$

(a) Solve the initial value problem and plot the solution.
(b) Determine the coordinates (t_M, y_M) of the maximum point.
(c) Change the second initial condition to $y'(0) = b > 0$ and find the solution as a function of b.
(d) Find the coordinates (t_M, y_M) of the maximum point in terms of b. Describe the dependence of t_M and y_M on b as b increases.

18. Consider the initial value problem

$$9y'' + 12y' + 4y = 0, \qquad y(0) = a > 0, \quad y'(0) = -1.$$

(a) Solve the initial value problem.
(b) Find the critical value of a that separates solutions that become negative from those that are always positive.

19. Consider the equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$. If the roots of the corresponding characteristic equation are real, show that a solution to the differential equation either is everywhere zero or else can take on the value zero at most once.

Problems 20 through 22 indicate other ways of finding the second solution when the characteristic equation has repeated roots.

20. (a) Consider the equation $y'' + 2ay' + a^2y = 0$. Show that the roots of the characteristic equation are $r_1 = r_2 = -a$, so that one solution of the equation is e^{-at}.

(b) Use Abel's formula [Eq. (23) of Section 3.2] to show that the Wronskian of any two solutions of the given equation is

$$W(t) = y_1(t)y_2'(t) - y_1'(t)y_2(t) = c_1e^{-2at},$$

where c_1 is a constant.

(c) Let $y_1(t) = e^{-at}$ and use the result of part (b) to obtain a differential equation satisfied by a second solution $y_2(t)$. By solving this equation, show that $y_2(t) = te^{-at}$.

21. Suppose that r_1 and r_2 are roots of $ar^2 + br + c = 0$ and that $r_1 \neq r_2$; then $\exp(r_1t)$ and $\exp(r_2t)$ are solutions of the differential equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$. Show that $\phi(t; r_1, r_2) = [\exp(r_2t) - \exp(r_1t)]/(r_2 - r_1)$ is also a solution of the equation for $r_2 \neq r_1$. Then think of r_1 as fixed, and use L'Hôpital's rule to evaluate the limit of $\phi(t; r_1, r_2)$ as $r_2 \to r_1$, thereby obtaining the second solution in the case of equal roots.

22. (a) If $ar^2 + br + c = 0$ has equal roots r_1, show that

$$L[e^{rt}] = a(e^{rt})'' + b(e^{rt})' + ce^{rt} = a(r - r_1)^2e^{rt}. \tag{i}$$

Since the right side of Eq. (i) is zero when $r = r_1$, it follows that $\exp(r_1t)$ is a solution of $L[y] = ay'' + by' + cy = 0$.

(b) Differentiate Eq. (i) with respect to r, and interchange differentiation with respect to r and with respect to t, thus showing that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r}L[e^{rt}] = L\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r}e^{rt}\right] = L[te^{rt}] = ate^{rt}(r - r_1)^2 + 2ae^{rt}(r - r_1). \tag{ii}$$

Since the right side of Eq. (ii) is zero when $r = r_1$, conclude that $t\exp(r_1t)$ is also a solution of $L[y] = 0$.

In each of Problems 23 through 30, use the method of reduction of order to find a second solution of the given differential equation.

23. $t^2y'' - 4ty' + 6y = 0, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t^2$
24. $t^2y'' + 2ty' - 2y = 0, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t$
25. $t^2y'' + 3ty' + y = 0, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t^{-1}$
26. $t^2y'' - t(t + 2)y' + (t + 2)y = 0, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t$
27. $xy'' - y' + 4x^3y = 0, \quad x > 0; \qquad y_1(x) = \sin x^2$
28. $(x - 1)y'' - xy' + y = 0, \quad x > 1; \qquad y_1(x) = e^x$
29. $x^2y'' - (x - 0.1875)y = 0, \quad x > 0; \qquad y_1(x) = x^{1/4}e^{2\sqrt{x}}$
30. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - 0.25)y = 0, \quad x > 0; \qquad y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x$

31. The differential equation

$$y'' + \delta(xy' + y) = 0$$

arises in the study of the turbulent flow of a uniform stream past a circular cylinder. Verify that $y_1(x) = \exp(-\delta x^2/2)$ is one solution, and then find the general solution in the form of an integral.

32. The method of Problem 20 can be extended to second order equations with variable coefficients. If y_1 is a known nonvanishing solution of $y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0$, show that a second solution y_2 satisfies $(y_2/y_1)' = W(y_1, y_2)/y_1^2$, where $W(y_1, y_2)$ is the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2. Then use Abel's formula [Eq. (23) of Section 3.2] to determine y_2.

In each of Problems 33 through 36, use the method of Problem 32 to find a second independent solution of the given equation.

33. $t^2y'' + 3ty' + y = 0, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t^{-1}$
34. $ty'' - y' + 4t^3y = 0, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = \sin(t^2)$
35. $(x - 1)y'' - xy' + y = 0, \quad x > 1; \qquad y_1(x) = e^x$
36. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - 0.25)y = 0, \quad x > 0; \qquad y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x$

Behavior of Solutions as $t \to \infty$. Problems 37 through 39 are concerned with the behavior of solutions as $t \to \infty$.

37. If a, b, and c are positive constants, show that all solutions of $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$ approach zero as $t \to \infty$.
38. (a) If $a > 0$ and $c > 0$, but $b = 0$, show that the result of Problem 37 is no longer true, but that all solutions are bounded as $t \to \infty$.

    (b) If $a > 0$ and $b > 0$, but $c = 0$, show that the result of Problem 37 is no longer true, but that all solutions approach a constant that depends on the initial conditions as $t \to \infty$. Determine this constant for the initial conditions $y(0) = y_0$, $y'(0) = y_0'$.
39. Show that $y = \sin t$ is a solution of

$$y'' + (k\sin^2 t)y' + (1 - k\cos t\sin t)y = 0$$

for any value of the constant k. If $0 < k < 2$, show that $1 - k\cos t\sin t > 0$ and $k\sin^2 t \geq 0$. Thus observe that even though the coefficients of this variable-coefficient differential equation are nonnegative (and the coefficient of y' is zero only at the points $t = 0, \pi, 2\pi, \ldots$), it has a solution that does not approach zero as $t \to \infty$. Compare this situation with the result of Problem 37. Thus we observe a not unusual situation in the study of differential equations: equations that are apparently very similar can have quite different properties.

Euler Equations. In each of Problems 40 through 45, use the substitution introduced in Problem 34 in Section 3.3 to solve the given differential equation.

40. $t^2y'' - 3ty' + 4y = 0, \qquad t > 0$
41. $t^2y'' + 2ty' + 0.25y = 0, \qquad t > 0$
42. $2t^2y'' - 5ty' + 5y = 0, \qquad t > 0$
43. $t^2y'' + 3ty' + y = 0, \qquad t > 0$
44. $4t^2y'' - 8ty' + 9y = 0, \qquad t > 0$
45. $t^2y'' + 5ty' + 13y = 0, \qquad t > 0$

3.5 Nonhomogeneous Equations; Method of Undetermined Coefficients

We now return to the nonhomogeneous equation

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{1}$$

where p, q, and g are given (continuous) functions on the open interval I. The equation

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0, \tag{2}$$

in which $g(t) = 0$ and p and q are the same as in Eq. (1), is called the homogeneous equation corresponding to Eq. (1). The following two results describe the structure of solutions of the nonhomogeneous equation (1) and provide a basis for constructing its general solution.

Theorem 3.5.1 If Y_1 and Y_2 are two solutions of the nonhomogeneous equation (1), then their difference $Y_1 - Y_2$ is a solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation (2). If, in addition, y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (2), then

$$Y_1(t) - Y_2(t) = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t), \tag{3}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are certain constants.

To prove this result, note that Y_1 and Y_2 satisfy the equations

$$L[Y_1](t) = g(t), \qquad L[Y_2](t) = g(t). \tag{4}$$

Subtracting the second of these equations from the first, we have

$$L[Y_1](t) - L[Y_2](t) = g(t) - g(t) = 0. \tag{5}$$

However,

$$L[Y_1] - L[Y_2] = L[Y_1 - Y_2],$$

so Eq. (5) becomes

$$L[Y_1 - Y_2](t) = 0. \tag{6}$$

Equation (6) states that $Y_1 - Y_2$ is a solution of Eq. (2). Finally, since by Theorem 3.2.4 all solutions of Eq. (2) can be expressed as linear combinations of a fundamental set of solutions, it follows that the solution $Y_1 - Y_2$ can be so written. Hence Eq. (3) holds and the proof is complete.

Theorem 3.5.2 The general solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1) can be written in the form

$$y = \phi(t) = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t) + Y(t), \tag{7}$$

where y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions of the corresponding homogeneous equation (2), c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants, and Y is some specific solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1).

The proof of Theorem 3.5.2 follows quickly from the preceding theorem. Note that Eq. (3) holds if we identify Y_1 with an arbitrary solution ϕ of Eq. (1) and Y_2 with the specific solution Y. From Eq. (3) we thereby obtain

$$\phi(t) - Y(t) = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t), \tag{8}$$

which is equivalent to Eq. (7). Since ϕ is an arbitrary solution of Eq. (1), the expression on the right side of Eq. (7) includes all solutions of Eq. (1); thus it is natural to call it the general solution of Eq. (1).

In somewhat different words, Theorem 3.5.2 states that to solve the nonhomogeneous equation (1), we must do three things:

1. Find the general solution $c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t)$ of the corresponding homogeneous equation. This solution is frequently called the complementary solution and may be denoted by $y_c(t)$.
2. Find some single solution $Y(t)$ of the nonhomogeneous equation. Often this solution is referred to as a particular solution.
3. Form the sum of the functions found in steps 1 and 2.

We have already discussed how to find $y_c(t)$, at least when the homogeneous equation (2) has constant coefficients. Therefore, in the remainder of this section and in the next, we will focus on finding a particular solution $Y(t)$ of the nonhomogeneous equation (1). There are two methods that we wish to discuss. They are known as the method of undetermined coefficients (discussed here) and the method of variation of parameters (see Section 3.6). Each has some advantages and some possible shortcomings.

Method of Undetermined Coefficients. The method of undetermined coefficients requires us to make an initial assumption about the form of the particular solution $Y(t)$, but with the coefficients left unspecified. We then substitute the assumed expression into Eq. (1) and attempt to determine the coefficients so as to satisfy that equation. If we are successful, then we have found a solution of the differential equation (1) and can use it for the particular solution $Y(t)$. If we cannot determine the coefficients, then this means that there is no solution of the form that we assumed. In this case we may modify the initial assumption and try again.

The main advantage of the method of undetermined coefficients is that it is straightforward to execute once the assumption is made about the form of $Y(t)$. Its major limitation is that it is useful primarily for equations for which we can easily write down the correct form of the particular solution in advance. For this reason, this method is usually used only for problems in which the homogeneous equation has constant coefficients and the nonhomogeneous term is restricted to a relatively small class of functions. In particular, we consider only nonhomogeneous terms that consist of polynomials, exponential functions, sines, and cosines. Despite this limitation, the method of undetermined coefficients is useful for solving many problems that have important applications. However, the algebraic details may become tedious, and a computer algebra system can be very helpful in practical applications. We will illustrate the method of undetermined coefficients by several simple examples and then summarize some rules for using it.

EXAMPLE 1

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 3e^{2t}. \tag{9}$$

We seek a function Y such that the combination $Y''(t) - 3Y'(t) - 4Y(t)$ is equal to $3e^{2t}$. Since the exponential function reproduces itself through differentiation, the most plausible way to achieve the desired result is to assume that $Y(t)$ is some multiple of e^{2t},

$$Y(t) = Ae^{2t},$$

where the coefficient A is yet to be determined. To find A, we calculate

$$Y'(t) = 2Ae^{2t}, \qquad Y''(t) = 4Ae^{2t},$$

and substitute for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (9). We obtain

$$(4A - 6A - 4A)e^{2t} = 3e^{2t}.$$

Hence $-6Ae^{2t}$ must equal $3e^{2t}$, so $A = -1/2$. Thus a particular solution is

$$Y(t) = -\tfrac{1}{2}e^{2t}. \tag{10}$$

EXAMPLE 2

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 2\sin t. \tag{11}$$

By analogy with Example 1, let us first assume that $Y(t) = A\sin t$, where A is a constant to be determined. On substituting in Eq. (11) we obtain

$$-A\sin t - 3A\cos t - 4A\sin t = 2\sin t,$$

or, by rearranging terms,

$$(2 + 5A)\sin t + 3A\cos t = 0. \tag{12}$$

We want Eq. (12) to hold for all t. Thus it must hold for two specific points, such as $t = 0$ and $t = \pi/2$. At these points Eq. (12) reduces to $3A = 0$ and $2 + 5A = 0$, respectively. These contradictory requirements mean that there is no choice of the constant A that makes Eq. (12) true for $t = 0$ and $t = \pi/2$, much less for all t. Thus we conclude that our assumption concerning $Y(t)$ is inadequate.

The appearance of the cosine term in Eq. (12) suggests that we modify our original assumption to include a cosine term in $Y(t)$; that is,

$$Y(t) = A\sin t + B\cos t,$$

where A and B are to be determined. Then

$$Y'(t) = A\cos t - B\sin t, \qquad Y''(t) = -A\sin t - B\cos t.$$

By substituting these expressions for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (11) and collecting terms, we obtain

$$(-A + 3B - 4A)\sin t + (-B - 3A - 4B)\cos t = 2\sin t. \tag{13}$$

To satisfy Eq. (13), we must match the coefficients of $\sin t$ and $\cos t$ on each side of the equation; thus A and B must satisfy the equations

$$-5A + 3B = 2, \qquad -3A - 5B = 0.$$

By solving these equations for A and B, we obtain $A = -5/17$ and $B = 3/17$; hence a particular solution of Eq. (11) is

$$Y(t) = -\tfrac{5}{17}\sin t + \tfrac{3}{17}\cos t.$$

The method illustrated in the preceding examples can also be used when the right side of the equation is a polynomial. Thus, to find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 4t^2 - 1, \tag{14}$$

we initially assume that $Y(t)$ is a polynomial of the same degree as the nonhomogeneous term; that is, $Y(t) = At^2 + Bt + C$.

To summarize our conclusions up to this point: if the nonhomogeneous term $g(t)$ in Eq. (1) is an exponential function $e^{\alpha t}$, then assume that $Y(t)$ is proportional to the same exponential function; if $g(t)$ is $\sin \beta t$ or $\cos \beta t$, then assume that $Y(t)$ is a linear combination of $\sin \beta t$ and $\cos \beta t$; if $g(t)$ is a polynomial, then assume that $Y(t)$ is a polynomial of like degree. The same principle extends to the case where $g(t)$ is a product of any two, or all three, of these types of functions, as the next example illustrates.

EXAMPLE 3

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = -8e^t \cos 2t. \tag{15}$$

In this case we assume that $Y(t)$ is the product of e^t and a linear combination of $\cos 2t$ and $\sin 2t$; that is,

$$Y(t) = Ae^t \cos 2t + Be^t \sin 2t.$$

The algebra is more tedious in this example, but it follows that

$$Y'(t) = (A + 2B)e^t \cos 2t + (-2A + B)e^t \sin 2t$$

and

$$Y''(t) = (-3A + 4B)e^t \cos 2t + (-4A - 3B)e^t \sin 2t.$$

By substituting these expressions in Eq. (15), we find that A and B must satisfy

$$10A + 2B = 8, \qquad 2A - 10B = 0.$$

Hence $A = 10/13$ and $B = 2/13$; therefore, a particular solution of Eq. (15) is

$$Y(t) = \tfrac{10}{13}e^t \cos 2t + \tfrac{2}{13}e^t \sin 2t.$$

Now suppose that $g(t)$ is the sum of two terms, $g(t) = g_1(t) + g_2(t)$, and suppose that Y_1 and Y_2 are solutions of the equations

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g_1(t) \tag{16}$$

and

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g_2(t), \tag{17}$$

respectively. Then $Y_1 + Y_2$ is a solution of the equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t). \tag{18}$$

To prove this statement, substitute $Y_1(t) + Y_2(t)$ for y in Eq. (18) and make use of Eqs. (16) and (17). A similar conclusion holds if $g(t)$ is the sum of any finite number of terms. The practical significance of this result is that for an equation whose nonhomogeneous function $g(t)$ can be expressed as a sum, you can consider instead several simpler equations and then add the results together. The following example is an illustration of this procedure.

EXAMPLE 4

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 3e^{2t} + 2\sin t - 8e^t \cos 2t. \tag{19}$$

By splitting up the right side of Eq. (19), we obtain the three equations

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 3e^{2t},$$
$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 2\sin t,$$

and

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = -8e^t \cos 2t.$$

Solutions of these three equations have been found in Examples 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Therefore, a particular solution of Eq. (19) is their sum, namely,

$$Y(t) = -\tfrac{1}{2}e^{2t} + \tfrac{3}{17}\cos t - \tfrac{5}{17}\sin t + \tfrac{10}{13}e^t \cos 2t + \tfrac{2}{13}e^t \sin 2t.$$

The procedure illustrated in these examples enables us to solve a fairly large class of problems in a reasonably efficient manner. However, there is one difficulty that sometimes occurs. The next example illustrates how it arises.

EXAMPLE 5

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 2e^{-t}. \tag{20}$$

Proceeding as in Example 1, we assume that $Y(t) = Ae^{-t}$. By substituting in Eq. (20), we obtain

$$(A + 3A - 4A)e^{-t} = 2e^{-t}. \tag{21}$$

Since the left side of Eq. (21) is zero, there is no choice of A that satisfies this equation. Therefore, there is no particular solution of Eq. (20) of the assumed form. The reason for this possibly unexpected result becomes clear if we solve the homogeneous equation

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 0 \tag{22}$$

that corresponds to Eq. (20). A fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (22) is $y_1(t) = e^{-t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{4t}$. Thus our assumed particular solution of Eq. (20) is actually a solution of the homogeneous equation (22); consequently, it cannot possibly be a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (20). To find a solution of Eq. (20), we must therefore consider functions of a somewhat different form.

At this stage, we have several possible alternatives. One is simply to try to guess the proper form of the particular solution of Eq. (20). Another is to solve this equation in some different way and then to use the result to guide our assumptions if this situation arises again in the future; see Problems 29 and 35 for other solution methods. Still another possibility is to seek a simpler equation where this difficulty occurs and to use its solution to suggest how we might proceed with Eq. (20). Adopting the latter approach, we look for a first order equation analogous to Eq. (20). One possibility is the linear equation

$$y' + y = 2e^{-t}. \tag{23}$$

If we try to find a particular solution of Eq. (23) of the form Ae^{-t}, we will fail because e^{-t} is a solution of the homogeneous equation $y' + y = 0$. However, from Section 2.1 we already know how to solve Eq. (23). An integrating factor is $\mu(t) = e^t$, and by multiplying by $\mu(t)$ and then integrating both sides, we obtain the solution

$$y = 2te^{-t} + ce^{-t}. \tag{24}$$

The second term on the right side of Eq. (24) is the general solution of the homogeneous equation $y' + y = 0$, but the first term is a solution of the full nonhomogeneous equation (23). Observe that it involves the exponential factor e^{-t} multiplied by the factor t. This is the clue that we were looking for.

We now return to Eq. (20) and assume a particular solution of the form $Y(t) = Ate^{-t}$. Then

$$Y'(t) = Ae^{-t} - Ate^{-t}, \qquad Y''(t) = -2Ae^{-t} + Ate^{-t}. \tag{25}$$

Substituting these expressions for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (20), we obtain

$$(-2A - 3A)e^{-t} + (A + 3A - 4A)te^{-t} = 2e^{-t}.$$

The coefficient of te^{-t} is zero, so from the terms involving e^t we have $-5A = 2$, or $A = -2/5$. Thus a particular solution of Eq. (20) is

$$Y(t) = -\tfrac{2}{5}te^{-t}. \tag{26}$$

The outcome of Example 5 suggests a modification of the principle stated previously: if the assumed form of the particular solution duplicates a solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation, then modify the assumed particular solution by multiplying it by t. Occasionally, this modification will be insufficient to remove all duplication with the solutions of the homogeneous equation, in which case it is necessary to multiply by t a second time. For a second order equation, it will never be necessary to carry the process further than this.

Summary. We now summarize the steps involved in finding the solution of an initial value problem consisting of a nonhomogeneous equation of the form

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \tag{27}$$

where the coefficients a, b, and c are constants, together with a given set of initial conditions.

1. Find the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation.
2. Make sure that the function $g(t)$ in Eq. (27) belongs to the class of functions discussed in this section; that is, be sure it involves nothing more than exponential functions, sines, cosines, polynomials, or sums or products of such functions. If this is not the case, use the method of variation of parameters (discussed in the next section).
3. If $g(t) = g_1(t) + \cdots + g_n(t)$—that is, if $g(t)$ is a sum of n terms—then form n subproblems, each of which contains only one of the terms $g_1(t), \dots, g_n(t)$. The ith subproblem consists of the equation
$$ay'' + by' + cy = g_i(t),$$
where i runs from 1 to n.
4. For the ith subproblem assume a particular solution $Y_i(t)$ consisting of the appropriate exponential function, sine, cosine, polynomial, or combination thereof. If there is any duplication in the assumed form of $Y_i(t)$ with the solutions of the homogeneous equation (found in step 1), then multiply $Y_i(t)$ by t, or (if necessary) by t^2, so as to remove the duplication. See Table 3.5.1.
5. Find a particular solution $Y_i(t)$ for each of the subproblems. Then the sum $Y_1(t) + \cdots + Y_n(t)$ is a particular solution of the full nonhomogeneous equation (27).
6. Form the sum of the general solution of the homogeneous equation (step 1) and the particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (step 5). This is the general solution of the nonhomogeneous equation.
7. Use the initial conditions to determine the values of the arbitrary constants remaining in the general solution.

For some problems this entire procedure is easy to carry out by hand, but often the algebraic calculations are lengthy. Once you understand clearly how the method works, a computer algebra system can be of great assistance in executing the details.

TABLE 3.5.1 The Particular Solution of $ay'' + by' + cy = g_i(t)$

$g_i(t)$	$Y_i(t)$
$P_n(t) = a_0t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n$	$t^s(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n)$
$P_n(t)e^{\alpha t}$	$t^s(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n)e^{\alpha t}$
$P_n(t)e^{\alpha t}\begin{cases}\sin \beta t\\ \cos \beta t\end{cases}$	$t^s[(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n)e^{\alpha t}\cos\beta t$ $+ (B_0t^n + B_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + B_n)e^{\alpha t}\sin\beta t]$

Notes. Here s is the smallest nonnegative integer ($s = 0, 1,$ or 2) that will ensure that no term in $Y_i(t)$ is a solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation. Equivalently, for the three cases, s is the number of times 0 is a root of the characteristic equation, α is a root of the characteristic equation, and $\alpha + i\beta$ is a root of the characteristic equation, respectively.

The method of undetermined coefficients is self-correcting in the sense that if you assume too little for $Y(t)$, then a contradiction is soon reached that usually points the way to the modification that is needed in the assumed form. On the other hand, if you assume too many terms, then some unnecessary work is done and some coefficients turn out to be zero, but at least the correct answer is obtained.

Proof of the Method of Undetermined Coefficients. In the preceding discussion we have described the method of undetermined coefficients on the basis of several examples. To prove that the procedure always works as stated, we now give a general argument, in which we consider three cases corresponding to different forms for the nonhomogeneous term $g(t)$.

Case 1: $\boldsymbol{g(t) = P_n(t) = a_0t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n}$. In this case Eq. (27) becomes

$$ay'' + by' + cy = a_0t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n. \tag{28}$$

To obtain a particular solution, we assume that

$$Y(t) = A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_{n-2}t^2 + A_{n-1}t + A_n. \tag{29}$$

Substituting in Eq. (28), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} &a[n(n-1)A_0t^{n-2} + \cdots + 2A_{n-2}] + b(nA_0t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_{n-1}) \\ &\quad + c(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n) = a_0t^n + \cdots + a_n. \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

Equating the coefficients of like powers of t, beginning with t^n, leads to the following sequence of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} cA_0 &= a_0, \\ cA_1 + nbA_0 &= a_1, \\ &\vdots \\ cA_n + bA_{n-1} + 2aA_{n-2} &= a_n. \end{aligned}$$

Provided that $c \neq 0$, the solution of the first equation is $A_0 = a_0/c$, and the remaining equations determine $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ successively. If $c = 0$ but $b \neq 0$, then the polynomial on the left side of Eq. (30) is of degree $n - 1$, and we cannot satisfy Eq. (30). To be sure that $aY''(t) + bY'(t)$ is a polynomial of degree n, we must choose $Y(t)$ to be a polynomial of degree $n+1$. Hence we assume that

$$Y(t) = t(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n).$$

There is no constant term in this expression for $Y(t)$, but there is no need to include such a term since a constant is a solution of the homogeneous equation when $c = 0$. Since $b \neq 0$, we have $A_0 = a_0/b(n+1)$, and the other coefficients $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ can be determined similarly. If both c and b are zero, we assume that

$$Y(t) = t^2(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n).$$

The term $aY''(t)$ gives rise to a term of degree n, and we can proceed as before. Again the constant and linear terms in $Y(t)$ are omitted, since in this case they are both solutions of the homogeneous equation.

Case 2: $\boldsymbol{g(t) = e^{\alpha t}P_n(t)}$. The problem of determining a particular solution of

$$ay'' + by' + cy = e^{\alpha t}P_n(t) \tag{31}$$

can be reduced to the preceding case by a substitution. Let

$$Y(t) = e^{\alpha t}u(t);$$

then

$$Y'(t) = e^{\alpha t}[u'(t) + \alpha u(t)]$$

and

$$Y''(t) = e^{\alpha t}[u''(t) + 2\alpha u'(t) + \alpha^2 u(t)].$$

Substituting for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (31), canceling the factor $e^{\alpha t}$, and collecting terms, we obtain

$$au''(t) + (2a\alpha + b)u'(t) + (a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c)u(t) = P_n(t). \tag{32}$$

The determination of a particular solution of Eq. (32) is precisely the same problem, except for the names of the constants, as solving Eq. (28). Therefore, if $a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c$ is not zero, we assume that $u(t) = A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n$; hence a particular solution of Eq. (31) is of the form

$$Y(t) = e^{\alpha t}(A_0t^n + A_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + A_n). \tag{33}$$

On the other hand, if $a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c$ is zero but $2a\alpha + b$ is not, we must take $u(t)$ to be of the form $t(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n)$. The corresponding form for $Y(t)$ is t times the expression on the right side of Eq. (33). Note that if $a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c$ is zero, then $e^{\alpha t}$ is a solution of the homogeneous equation. If both $a\alpha^2 + b\alpha + c$ and $2a\alpha + b$ are zero (and this implies that both $e^{\alpha t}$ and $te^{\alpha t}$ are solutions of the homogeneous equation), then the correct form for $u(t)$ is $t^2(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n)$. Hence $Y(t)$ is t^2 times the expression on the right side of Eq. (33).

Case 3: $\boldsymbol{g(t) = e^{\alpha t}P_n(t)\cos\beta t}$ ***or*** $\boldsymbol{e^{\alpha t}P_n(t)\sin\beta t}$. These two cases are similar, so we consider only the latter. We can reduce this problem to the preceding one by noting that, as a consequence of Euler's formula, $\sin\beta t = (e^{i\beta t} - e^{-i\beta t})/2i$. Hence $g(t)$ is of the form

$$g(t) = P_n(t)\frac{e^{(\alpha+i\beta)t} - e^{(\alpha-i\beta)t}}{2i},$$

and we should choose

$$Y(t) = e^{(\alpha+i\beta)t}(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n) + e^{(\alpha-i\beta)t}(B_0t^n + \cdots + B_n),$$

or, equivalently,

$$Y(t) = e^{\alpha t}(A_0t^n + \cdots + A_n)\cos\beta t + e^{\alpha t}(B_0t^n + \cdots + B_n)\sin\beta t.$$

Usually, the latter form is preferred. If $\alpha \pm i\beta$ satisfy the characteristic equation corresponding to the homogeneous equation, we must, of course, multiply each of the polynomials by t to increase their degrees by one.

If the nonhomogeneous function involves both $\cos\beta t$ and $\sin\beta t$, it is usually convenient to treat these terms together, since each one individually may give rise to the same form for a particular solution. For example, if $g(t) = t\sin t + 2\cos t$, the form for $Y(t)$ would be

$$Y(t) = (A_0t + A_1)\sin t + (B_0t + B_1)\cos t,$$

provided that $\sin t$ and $\cos t$ are not solutions of the homogeneous equation.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 14, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y'' - 2y' - 3y = 3e^{2t}$
2. $y'' + 2y' + 5y = 3\sin 2t$
3. $y'' - y' - 2y = -2t + 4t^2$
4. $y'' + y' - 6y = 12e^{3t} + 12e^{-2t}$
5. $y'' - 2y' - 3y = -3te^{-t}$
6. $y'' + 2y' = 3 + 4\sin 2t$
7. $y'' + 9y = t^2e^{3t} + 6$
8. $y'' + 2y' + y = 2e^{-t}$
9. $2y'' + 3y' + y = t^2 + 3\sin t$
10. $y'' + y = 3\sin 2t + t\cos 2t$
11. $u'' + \omega_0^2 u = \cos\omega t, \qquad \omega^2 \neq \omega_0^2$
12. $u'' + \omega_0^2 u = \cos\omega_0 t$
13. $y'' + y' + 4y = 2\sinh t$
    Hint: $\sinh t = (e^t - e^{-t})/2$
14. $y'' - y' - 2y = \cosh 2t$
    Hint: $\cosh t = (e^t + e^{-t})/2$

In each of Problems 15 through 20, find the solution of the given initial value problem.

15. $y'' + y' - 2y = 2t, \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$
16. $y'' + 4y = t^2 + 3e^t, \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 2$
17. $y'' - 2y' + y = te^t + 4, \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 1$
18. $y'' - 2y' - 3y = 3te^{2t}, \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$
19. $y'' + 4y = 3\sin 2t, \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$
20. $y'' + 2y' + 5y = 4e^{-t}\cos 2t, \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$

In each of Problems 21 through 28:

(a) Determine a suitable form for $Y(t)$ if the method of undetermined coefficients is to be used.

(b) Use a computer algebra system to find a particular solution of the given equation.

21. $y'' + 3y' = 2t^4 + t^2e^{-3t} + \sin 3t$
22. $y'' + y = t(1 + \sin t)$
23. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = e^t\cos 2t + e^{2t}(3t + 4)\sin t$
24. $y'' + 2y' + 2y = 3e^{-t} + 2e^{-t}\cos t + 4e^{-t}t^2\sin t$
25. $y'' - 4y' + 4y = 2t^2 + 4te^{2t} + t\sin 2t$
26. $y'' + 4y = t^2\sin 2t + (6t + 7)\cos 2t$

27. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = e^t(t^2 + 1)\sin 2t + 3e^{-t}\cos t + 4e^t$
28. $y'' + 2y' + 5y = 3te^{-t}\cos 2t - 2te^{-2t}\cos t$
29. Consider the equation

$$y'' - 3y' - 4y = 2e^{-t} \tag{i}$$

from Example 5. Recall that $y_1(t) = e^{-t}$ and $y_2(t) = e^{4t}$ are solutions of the corresponding homogeneous equation. Adapting the method of reduction of order (Section 3.4), seek a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation of the form $Y(t) = v(t)y_1(t) = v(t)e^{-t}$, where $v(t)$ is to be determined.

(a) Substitute $Y(t)$, $Y'(t)$, and $Y''(t)$ into Eq. (i) and show that $v(t)$ must satisfy $v'' - 5v' = 2$.

(b) Let $w(t) = v'(t)$ and show that $w(t)$ must satisfy $w' - 5w = 2$. Solve this equation for $w(t)$.

(c) Integrate $w(t)$ to find $v(t)$ and then show that

$$Y(t) = -\tfrac{2}{5}te^{-t} + \tfrac{1}{5}c_1e^{4t} + c_2e^{-t}.$$

The first term on the right side is the desired particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation. Note that it is a product of t and e^{-t}.

30. Determine the general solution of

$$y'' + \lambda^2 y = \sum_{m=1}^{N} a_m \sin m\pi t,$$

where $\lambda > 0$ and $\lambda \neq m\pi$ for $m = 1, \ldots, N$.

31. In many physical problems the nonhomogeneous term may be specified by different formulas in different time periods. As an example, determine the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of

$$y'' + y = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t \le \pi, \\ \pi e^{\pi - t}, & t > \pi, \end{cases}$$

satisfying the initial conditions $y(0) = 0$ and $y'(0) = 1$. Assume that y and y' are also continuous at $t = \pi$. Plot the nonhomogeneous term and the solution as functions of time. *Hint:* First solve the initial value problem for $t \le \pi$; then solve for $t > \pi$, determining the constants in the latter solution from the continuity conditions at $t = \pi$.

32. Follow the instructions in Problem 31 to solve the differential equation

$$y'' + 2y' + 5y = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t \le \pi/2, \\ 0, & t > \pi/2 \end{cases}$$

with the initial conditions $y(0) = 0$ and $y'(0) = 0$.

Behavior of Solutions as $t \to \infty$. In Problems 33 and 34, we continue the discussion started with Problems 37 through 39 of Section 3.4. Consider the differential equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \tag{i}$$

where a, b, and c are positive.

33. If $Y_1(t)$ and $Y_2(t)$ are solutions of Eq. (i), show that $Y_1(t) - Y_2(t) \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$. Is this result true if $b = 0$?
34. If $g(t) = d$, a constant, show that every solution of Eq. (i) approaches d/c as $t \to \infty$. What happens if $c = 0$? What if $b = 0$ also?

35. In this problem we indicate an alternative procedure[7] for solving the differential equation

$$y'' + by' + cy = (D^2 + bD + c)y = g(t), \tag{i}$$

where b and c are constants, and D denotes differentiation with respect to t. Let r_1 and r_2 be the zeros of the characteristic polynomial of the corresponding homogeneous equation. These roots may be real and different, real and equal, or conjugate complex numbers.

(a) Verify that Eq. (i) can be written in the factored form

$$(D - r_1)(D - r_2)y = g(t),$$

where $r_1 + r_2 = -b$ and $r_1 r_2 = c$.

(b) Let $u = (D - r_2)y$. Then show that the solution of Eq (i) can be found by solving the following two first order equations:

$$(D - r_1)u = g(t), \qquad (D - r_2)y = u(t).$$

In each of Problems 36 through 39, use the method of Problem 35 to solve the given differential equation.

36. $y'' - 3y' - 4y = 3e^{2t}$ (see Example 1)
37. $2y'' + 3y' + y = t^2 + 3\sin t$ (see Problem 9)
38. $y'' + 2y' + y = 2e^{-t}$ (see Problem 8)
39. $y'' + 2y' = 3 + 4\sin 2t$ (see Problem 6)

3.6 Variation of Parameters

In this section we describe another method of finding a particular solution of a nonhomogeneous equation. This method, **variation of parameters**, is due to Lagrange and complements the method of undetermined coefficients rather well. The main advantage of variation of parameters is that it is a *general method*; in principle at least, it can be applied to any equation, and it requires no detailed assumptions about the form of the solution. In fact, later in this section we use this method to derive a formula for a particular solution of an arbitrary second order linear nonhomogeneous differential equation. On the other hand, the method of variation of parameters eventually requires us to evaluate certain integrals involving the nonhomogeneous term in the differential equation, and this may present difficulties. Before looking at this method in the general case, we illustrate its use in an example.

EXAMPLE 1

Find a particular solution of

$$y'' + 4y = 3\csc t. \tag{1}$$

Observe that this problem is not a good candidate for the method of undetermined coefficients, as described in Section 3.5, because the nonhomogeneous term $g(t) = 3\csc t$ involves

[7]R. S. Luthar, "Another Approach to a Standard Differential Equation," *Two Year College Mathematics Journal 10* (1979), pp. 200–201. Also see D. C. Sandell and F. M. Stein, "Factorization of Operators of Second Order Linear Homogeneous Ordinary Differential Equations," *Two Year College Mathematics Journal 8* (1977), pp. 132–141, for a more general discussion of factoring operators.

a quotient (rather than a sum or a product) of $\sin t$ or $\cos t$. Therefore, we need a different approach. Observe also that the homogeneous equation corresponding to Eq. (1) is

$$y'' + 4y = 0, \tag{2}$$

and that the general solution of Eq. (2) is

$$y_c(t) = c_1 \cos 2t + c_2 \sin 2t. \tag{3}$$

The basic idea in the method of variation of parameters is to replace the constants c_1 and c_2 in Eq. (3) by functions $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$, respectively, and then to determine these functions so that the resulting expression

$$y = u_1(t) \cos 2t + u_2(t) \sin 2t \tag{4}$$

is a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1).

To determine u_1 and u_2, we need to substitute for y from Eq. (4) in Eq. (1). However, even without carrying out this substitution, we can anticipate that the result will be a single equation involving some combination of u_1, u_2, and their first two derivatives. Since there is only one equation and two unknown functions, we can expect that there are many possible choices of u_1 and u_2 that will meet our needs. Alternatively, we may be able to impose a second condition of our own choosing, thereby obtaining two equations for the two unknown functions u_1 and u_2. We will soon show (following Lagrange) that it is possible to choose this second condition in a way that makes the computation markedly more efficient.

Returning now to Eq. (4), we differentiate it and rearrange the terms, thereby obtaining

$$y' = -2u_1(t) \sin 2t + 2u_2(t) \cos 2t + u_1'(t) \cos 2t + u_2'(t) \sin 2t. \tag{5}$$

Keeping in mind the possibility of choosing a second condition on u_1 and u_2, let us require the sum of the last two terms on the right side of Eq. (5) to be zero; that is, we require that

$$u_1'(t) \cos 2t + u_2'(t) \sin 2t = 0. \tag{6}$$

It then follows from Eq. (5) that

$$y' = -2u_1(t) \sin 2t + 2u_2(t) \cos 2t. \tag{7}$$

Although the ultimate effect of the condition (6) is not yet clear, at the very least it has simplified the expression for y'. Further, by differentiating Eq. (7) we obtain

$$y'' = -4u_1(t) \cos 2t - 4u_2(t) \sin 2t - 2u_1'(t) \sin 2t + 2u_2'(t) \cos 2t. \tag{8}$$

Then, substituting for y and y'' in Eq. (1) from Eqs. (4) and (8), respectively, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} y'' + 4y = &- 4u_1(t) \cos 2t - 4u_2(t) \sin 2t - 2u_1'(t) \sin 2t + 2u_2'(t) \cos 2t \\ &+ 4u_1(t) \cos 2t + 4u_2(t) \sin 2t = 3 \csc t. \end{aligned}$$

Hence u_1 and u_2 must satisfy

$$-2u_1'(t) \sin 2t + 2u_2'(t) \cos 2t = 3 \csc t. \tag{9}$$

Summarizing our results to this point, we want to choose u_1 and u_2 so as to satisfy Eqs. (6) and (9). These equations can be viewed as a pair of linear *algebraic* equations for the two unknown quantities $u_1'(t)$ and $u_2'(t)$. Equations (6) and (9) can be solved in various ways. For example, solving Eq. (6) for $u_2'(t)$, we have

$$u_2'(t) = -u_1'(t) \frac{\cos 2t}{\sin 2t}. \tag{10}$$

Then, substituting for $u_2'(t)$ in Eq. (9) and simplifying, we obtain

$$u_1'(t) = -\frac{3\csc t \sin 2t}{2} = -3\cos t. \tag{11}$$

Further, putting this expression for $u_1'(t)$ back in Eq. (10) and using the double-angle formulas, we find that

$$u_2'(t) = \frac{3\cos t \cos 2t}{\sin 2t} = \frac{3(1 - 2\sin^2 t)}{2\sin t} = \frac{3}{2}\csc t - 3\sin t. \tag{12}$$

Having obtained $u_1'(t)$ and $u_2'(t)$, we next integrate so as to find $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$. The result is

$$u_1(t) = -3\sin t + c_1 \tag{13}$$

and

$$u_2(t) = \tfrac{3}{2}\ln|\csc t - \cot t| + 3\cos t + c_2. \tag{14}$$

On substituting these expressions in Eq. (4), we have

$$\begin{aligned} y = {} & -3\sin t \cos 2t + \tfrac{3}{2}\ln|\csc t - \cot t| \sin 2t + 3\cos t \sin 2t \\ & + c_1 \cos 2t + c_2 \sin 2t. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, by using the double-angle formulas once more, we obtain

$$y = 3\sin t + \tfrac{3}{2}\ln|\csc t - \cot t| \sin 2t + c_1\cos 2t + c_2 \sin 2t. \tag{15}$$

The terms in Eq. (15) involving the arbitrary constants c_1 and c_2 are the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation, while the remaining terms are a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (1). Thus Eq. (15) is the general solution of Eq. (1).

In the preceding example the method of variation of parameters worked well in determining a particular solution, and hence the general solution, of Eq. (1). The next question is whether this method can be applied effectively to an arbitrary equation. Therefore, we consider

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{16}$$

where p, q, and g are given continuous functions. As a starting point, we assume that we know the general solution

$$y_c(t) = c_1 y_1(t) + c_2 y_2(t) \tag{17}$$

of the corresponding homogeneous equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = 0. \tag{18}$$

This is a major assumption. So far we have shown how to solve Eq. (18) only if it has constant coefficients. If Eq. (18) has coefficients that depend on t, then usually the methods described in Chapter 5 must be used to obtain $y_c(t)$.

The crucial idea, as illustrated in Example 1, is to replace the constants c_1 and c_2 in Eq. (17) by functions $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$, respectively; thus we have

$$y = u_1(t)y_1(t) + u_2(t)y_2(t). \tag{19}$$

Then we try to determine $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$ so that the expression in Eq. (19) is a solution of the nonhomogeneous equation (16) rather than the homogeneous equation (18). Thus we differentiate Eq. (19), obtaining

$$y' = u_1'(t)y_1(t) + u_1(t)y_1'(t) + u_2'(t)y_2(t) + u_2(t)y_2'(t). \tag{20}$$

As in Example 1, we now set the terms involving $u_1'(t)$ and $u_2'(t)$ in Eq. (20) equal to zero; that is, we require that

$$u_1'(t)y_1(t) + u_2'(t)y_2(t) = 0. \tag{21}$$

Then, from Eq. (20), we have

$$y' = u_1(t)y_1'(t) + u_2(t)y_2'(t). \tag{22}$$

Further, by differentiating again, we obtain

$$y'' = u_1'(t)y_1'(t) + u_1(t)y_1''(t) + u_2'(t)y_2'(t) + u_2(t)y_2''(t). \tag{23}$$

Now we substitute for y, y', and y'' in Eq. (16) from Eqs. (19), (22), and (23), respectively. After rearranging the terms in the resulting equation, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} u_1(t)\big[y_1''(t) + p(t)y_1'(t) + q(t)y_1(t)\big] \\ + u_2(t)\big[y_2''(t) + p(t)y_2'(t) + q(t)y_2(t)\big] \\ + u_1'(t)y_1'(t) + u_2'(t)y_2'(t) = g(t). \end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

Each of the expressions in square brackets in Eq. (24) is zero because both y_1 and y_2 are solutions of the homogeneous equation (18). Therefore, Eq. (24) reduces to

$$u_1'(t)y_1'(t) + u_2'(t)y_2'(t) = g(t). \tag{25}$$

Equations (21) and (25) form a system of two linear algebraic equations for the derivatives $u_1'(t)$ and $u_2'(t)$ of the unknown functions. They correspond exactly to Eqs. (6) and (9) in Example 1.

By solving the system (21), (25) we obtain

$$u_1'(t) = -\frac{y_2(t)g(t)}{W(y_1, y_2)(t)}, \qquad u_2'(t) = \frac{y_1(t)g(t)}{W(y_1, y_2)(t)}, \tag{26}$$

where $W(y_1, y_2)$ is the Wronskian of y_1 and y_2. Note that division by W is permissible since y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions, and therefore their Wronskian is nonzero. By integrating Eqs. (26), we find the desired functions $u_1(t)$ and $u_2(t)$, namely,

$$u_1(t) = -\int \frac{y_2(t)g(t)}{W(y_1, y_2)(t)}\,dt + c_1, \qquad u_2(t) = \int \frac{y_1(t)g(t)}{W(y_1, y_2)(t)}\,dt + c_2. \tag{27}$$

If the integrals in Eqs. (27) can be evaluated in terms of elementary functions, then we substitute the results in Eq. (19), thereby obtaining the general solution of Eq. (16). More generally, the solution can always be expressed in terms of integrals, as stated in the following theorem.

Theorem 3.6.1

If the functions p, q, and g are continuous on an open interval I, and if the functions y_1 and y_2 are a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous equation (18) corresponding to the nonhomogeneous equation (16)

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t),$$

then a particular solution of Eq. (16) is

$$Y(t) = -y_1(t)\int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{y_2(s)g(s)}{W(y_1,y_2)(s)}\,ds + y_2(t)\int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{y_1(s)g(s)}{W(y_1,y_2)(s)}\,ds, \tag{28}$$

where t_0 is any conveniently chosen point in I. The general solution is

$$y = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) + Y(t), \tag{29}$$

as prescribed by Theorem 3.5.2.

By examining the expression (28) and reviewing the process by which we derived it, we can see that there may be two major difficulties in using the method of variation of parameters. As we have mentioned earlier, one is the determination of $y_1(t)$ and $y_2(t)$, a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous equation (18), when the coefficients in that equation are not constants. The other possible difficulty lies in the evaluation of the integrals appearing in Eq. (28). This depends entirely on the nature of the functions y_1, y_2, and g. In using Eq. (28), be sure that the differential equation is exactly in the form (16); otherwise, the nonhomogeneous term $g(t)$ will not be correctly identified.

A major advantage of the method of variation of parameters is that Eq. (28) provides an expression for the particular solution $Y(t)$ in terms of an arbitrary forcing function $g(t)$. This expression is a good starting point if you wish to investigate the effect of variations in the forcing function, or if you wish to analyze the response of a system to a number of different forcing functions.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 4, use the method of variation of parameters to find a particular solution of the given differential equation. Then check your answer by using the method of undetermined coefficients.

1. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = 2e^t$
2. $y'' - y' - 2y = 2e^{-t}$
3. $y'' + 2y' + y = 3e^{-t}$
4. $4y'' - 4y' + y = 16e^{t/2}$

In each of Problems 5 through 12, find the general solution of the given differential equation. In Problems 11 and 12, g is an arbitrary continuous function.

5. $y'' + y = \tan t, \quad 0 < t < \pi/2$
6. $y'' + 9y = 9\sec^2 3t, \quad 0 < t < \pi/6$
7. $y'' + 4y' + 4y = t^{-2}e^{-2t}, \quad t > 0$
8. $y'' + 4y = 3\csc 2t, \quad 0 < t < \pi/2$
9. $4y'' + y = 2\sec(t/2), \quad -\pi < t < \pi$
10. $y'' - 2y' + y = e^t/(1+t^2)$
11. $y'' - 5y' + 6y = g(t)$
12. $y'' + 4y = g(t)$

In each of Problems 13 through 20, verify that the given functions y_1 and y_2 satisfy the corresponding homogeneous equation; then find a particular solution of the given nonhomogeneous equation. In Problems 19 and 20, g is an arbitrary continuous function.

13. $t^2y'' - 2y = 3t^2 - 1, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t^2, \quad y_2(t) = t^{-1}$
14. $t^2y'' - t(t+2)y' + (t+2)y = 2t^3, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t, \quad y_2(t) = te^t$
15. $ty'' - (1+t)y' + y = t^2e^{2t}, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = 1+t, \quad y_2(t) = e^t$
16. $(1-t)y'' + ty' - y = 2(t-1)^2e^{-t}, \quad 0 < t < 1; \qquad y_1(t) = e^t, \quad y_2(t) = t$
17. $x^2y'' - 3xy' + 4y = x^2\ln x, \quad x > 0; \qquad y_1(x) = x^2, \quad y_2(x) = x^2\ln x$

18. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - 0.25)y = 3x^{3/2}\sin x, \quad x > 0;$
$y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x, \quad y_2(x) = x^{-1/2}\cos x$
19. $(1-x)y'' + xy' - y = g(x), \quad 0 < x < 1; \qquad y_1(x) = e^x, \quad y_2(x) = x$
20. $x^2y'' + xy' + (x^2 - 0.25)y = g(x), \quad x > 0; \qquad y_1(x) = x^{-1/2}\sin x, \quad y_2(x) = x^{-1/2}\cos x$
21. Show that the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \qquad y(t_0) = y_0, \quad y'(t_0) = y_0' \tag{i}$$

can be written as $y = u(t) + v(t)$, where u and v are solutions of the two initial value problems

$$L[u] = 0, \qquad u(t_0) = y_0, \quad u'(t_0) = y_0', \tag{ii}$$

$$L[v] = g(t), \qquad v(t_0) = 0, \quad v'(t_0) = 0, \tag{iii}$$

respectively. In other words, the nonhomogeneities in the differential equation and in the initial conditions can be dealt with separately. Observe that u is easy to find if a fundamental set of solutions of $L[u] = 0$ is known.
22. By choosing the lower limit of integration in Eq. (28) in the text as the initial point t_0, show that $Y(t)$ becomes

$$Y(t) = \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{y_1(s)y_2(t) - y_1(t)y_2(s)}{y_1(s)y_2'(s) - y_1'(s)y_2(s)}\, g(s)\, ds.$$

Show that $Y(t)$ is a solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = g(t), \qquad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0.$$

Thus Y can be identified with v in Problem 21.
23. (a) Use the result of Problem 22 to show that the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + y = g(t), \qquad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0 \tag{i}$$

is

$$y = \int_{t_0}^{t} \sin(t-s)g(s)\, ds. \tag{ii}$$

(b) Use the result of Problem 21 to find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y'' + y = g(t), \qquad y(0) = y_0, \quad y'(0) = y_0'.$$

24. Use the result of Problem 22 to find the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = (D-a)(D-b)y = g(t), \qquad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where a and b are real numbers with $a \neq b$.
25. Use the result of Problem 22 to find the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = [D^2 - 2\lambda D + (\lambda^2 + \mu^2)]y = g(t), \qquad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0.$$

Note that the roots of the characteristic equation are $\lambda \pm i\mu$.
26. Use the result of Problem 22 to find the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = (D-a)^2 y = g(t), \qquad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where a is any real number.

27. By combining the results of Problems 24 through 26, show that the solution of the initial value problem

$$L[y] = (D^2 + bD + c)y = g(t), \qquad y(t_0) = 0, \quad y'(t_0) = 0,$$

where b and c are constants, has the form

$$y = \phi(t) = \int_{t_0}^{t} K(t - s)g(s)\, ds. \tag{i}$$

The function K depends only on the solutions y_1 and y_2 of the corresponding homogeneous equation and is independent of the nonhomogeneous term. Once K is determined, all nonhomogeneous problems involving the same differential operator L are reduced to the evaluation of an integral. Note also that although K depends on both t and s, only the combination $t - s$ appears, so K is actually a function of a single variable. When we think of $g(t)$ as the input to the problem and of $\phi(t)$ as the output, it follows from Eq. (i) that the output depends on the input over the entire interval from the initial point t_0 to the current value t. The integral in Eq. (i) is called the **convolution** of K and g, and K is referred to as the **kernel**.

28. The method of reduction of order (Section 3.4) can also be used for the nonhomogeneous equation

$$y'' + p(t)y' + q(t)y = g(t), \tag{i}$$

provided one solution y_1 of the corresponding homogeneous equation is known. Let $y = v(t)y_1(t)$ and show that y satisfies Eq. (i) if v is a solution of

$$y_1(t)v'' + [2y_1'(t) + p(t)y_1(t)]v' = g(t). \tag{ii}$$

Equation (ii) is a first order linear equation for v'. By solving this equation, integrating the result, and then multiplying by $y_1(t)$, you can find the general solution of Eq. (i).

In each of Problems 29 through 32, use the method outlined in Problem 28 to solve the given differential equation.

29. $t^2y'' - 2ty' + 2y = 4t^2, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t$
30. $t^2y'' + 7ty' + 5y = t, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t^{-1}$
31. $ty'' - (1 + t)y' + y = t^2e^{2t}, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = 1 + t$ (see Problem 15)
32. $(1 - t)y'' + ty' - y = 2(t - 1)^2e^{-t}, \quad 0 < t < 1; \qquad y_1(t) = e^t$ (see Problem 16)

3.7 Mechanical and Electrical Vibrations

One of the reasons why second order linear equations with constant coefficients are worth studying is that they serve as mathematical models of some important physical processes. Two important areas of application are the fields of mechanical and electrical oscillations. For example, the motion of a mass on a vibrating spring, the torsional oscillations of a shaft with a flywheel, the flow of electric current in a simple series circuit, and many other physical problems are all described by the solution of an initial value problem of the form

$$ay'' + by' + cy = g(t), \qquad y(0) = y_0, \quad y'(0) = y_0'. \tag{1}$$

This illustrates a fundamental relationship between mathematics and physics: *many physical problems may have the same mathematical model*. Thus, once we know

25. (a) Show that the functions $f(t) = t^2|t|$ and $g(t) = t^3$ are linearly dependent on $0 < t < 1$ and on $-1 < t < 0$.
    (b) Show that $f(t)$ and $g(t)$ are linearly independent on $-1 < t < 1$.
    (c) Show that $W(f, g)(t)$ is zero for all t in $-1 < t < 1$.
26. Show that if y_1 is a solution of

$$y''' + p_1(t)y'' + p_2(t)y' + p_3(t)y = 0,$$

then the substitution $y = y_1(t)v(t)$ leads to the following second order equation for v':

$$y_1 v''' + (3y_1' + p_1 y_1)v'' + (3y_1'' + 2p_1 y_1' + p_2 y_1)v' = 0.$$

In each of Problems 27 and 28, use the method of reduction of order (Problem 26) to solve the given differential equation.

27. $(2 - t)y''' + (2t - 3)y'' - ty' + y = 0, \quad t < 2; \qquad y_1(t) = e^t$
28. $t^2(t + 3)y''' - 3t(t + 2)y'' + 6(1 + t)y' - 6y = 0, \quad t > 0; \qquad y_1(t) = t^2, \quad y_2(t) = t^3$

4.2 Homogeneous Equations with Constant Coefficients

Consider the nth order linear homogeneous differential equation

$$L[y] = a_0 y^{(n)} + a_1 y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_{n-1}y' + a_n y = 0, \tag{1}$$

where $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_n$ are real constants and $a_0 \neq 0$. From our knowledge of second order linear equations with constant coefficients, it is natural to anticipate that $y = e^{rt}$ is a solution of Eq. (1) for suitable values of r. Indeed,

$$L[e^{rt}] = e^{rt}(a_0 r^n + a_1 r^{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1}r + a_n) = e^{rt}Z(r) \tag{2}$$

for all r, where

$$Z(r) = a_0 r^n + a_1 r^{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1}r + a_n. \tag{3}$$

For those values of r for which $Z(r) = 0$, it follows that $L[e^{rt}] = 0$ and $y = e^{rt}$ is a solution of Eq. (1). The polynomial $Z(r)$ is called the **characteristic polynomial**, and the equation $Z(r) = 0$ is the **characteristic equation** of the differential equation (1). Since $a_0 \neq 0$, we know that $Z(r)$ is a polynomial of degree n and therefore has n zeros,[1] say, $r_1, r_2, \ldots, r_n$, some of which may be equal. Hence we can write the characteristic polynomial in the form

$$Z(r) = a_0(r - r_1)(r - r_2)\cdots(r - r_n). \tag{4}$$

[1]An important question in mathematics for more than 200 years was whether every polynomial equation has at least one root. The affirmative answer to this question, the fundamental theorem of algebra, was given by Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855) in his doctoral dissertation in 1799, although his proof does not meet modern standards of rigor. Several other proofs have been discovered since, including three by Gauss himself. Today, students often meet the fundamental theorem of algebra in a first course on complex variables, where it can be established as a consequence of some of the basic properties of complex analytic functions.

Real and Unequal Roots. If the roots of the characteristic equation are real and no two are equal, then we have n distinct solutions $e^{r_1 t}, e^{r_2 t}, \ldots, e^{r_n t}$ of Eq. (1). If these functions are linearly independent, then the general solution of Eq. (1) is

$$y = c_1 e^{r_1 t} + c_2 e^{r_2 t} + \cdots + c_n e^{r_n t}. \tag{5}$$

One way to establish the linear independence of $e^{r_1 t}, e^{r_2 t}, \ldots, e^{r_n t}$ is to evaluate their Wronskian determinant. Another way is outlined in Problem 40.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of

$$y^{(4)} + y''' - 7y'' - y' + 6y = 0. \tag{6}$$

Also find the solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 1, \qquad y'(0) = 0, \qquad y''(0) = -2, \qquad y'''(0) = -1 \tag{7}$$

and plot its graph.

Assuming that $y = e^{rt}$, we must determine r by solving the polynomial equation

$$r^4 + r^3 - 7r^2 - r + 6 = 0. \tag{8}$$

The roots of this equation are $r_1 = 1$, $r_2 = -1$, $r_3 = 2$, and $r_4 = -3$. Therefore, the general solution of Eq. (6) is

$$y = c_1 e^t + c_2 e^{-t} + c_3 e^{2t} + c_4 e^{-3t}. \tag{9}$$

The initial conditions (7) require that $c_1, \ldots, c_4$ satisfy the four equations

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 + c_2 + c_3 + c_4 &= 1, \\ c_1 - c_2 + 2c_3 - 3c_4 &= 0, \\ c_1 + c_2 + 4c_3 + 9c_4 &= -2, \\ c_1 - c_2 + 8c_3 - 27c_4 &= -1. \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

By solving this system of four linear algebraic equations, we find that

$$c_1 = \tfrac{11}{8}, \qquad c_2 = \tfrac{5}{12}, \qquad c_3 = -\tfrac{2}{3}, \qquad c_4 = -\tfrac{1}{8}.$$

Thus the solution of the initial value problem is

$$y = \tfrac{11}{8}e^t + \tfrac{5}{12}e^{-t} - \tfrac{2}{3}e^{2t} - \tfrac{1}{8}e^{-3t}. \tag{11}$$

The graph of the solution is shown in Figure 4.2.1.

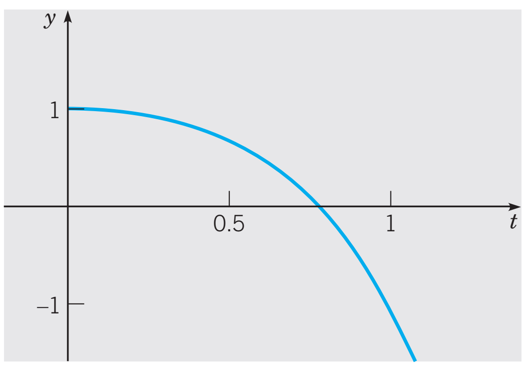


FIGURE 4.2.1 Solution of the initial value problem (6), (7): $y^{(4)} + y''' - 7y'' - y' + 6y = 0$, $y(0) = 1$, $y'(0) = 0$, $y''(0) = -2$, $y'''(0) = -1$.

As Example 1 illustrates, the procedure for solving an nth order linear differential equation with constant coefficients depends on finding the roots of a corresponding nth degree polynomial equation. If initial conditions are prescribed, then a system of n linear algebraic equations must be solved to determine the proper values of the constants $c_1, \ldots, c_n$. Each of these tasks becomes much more complicated as n increases, and we have omitted the detailed calculations in Example 1. Computer assistance can be very helpful in such problems.

For third and fourth degree polynomials there are formulas,[2] analogous to the formula for quadratic equations but more complicated, that give exact expressions for the roots. Root-finding algorithms are readily available on calculators and computers. Sometimes they are included in the differential equation solver, so that the process of factoring the characteristic polynomial is hidden and the solution of the differential equation is produced automatically.

If you are faced with the need to factor the characteristic polynomial by hand, here is one result that is sometimes helpful. Suppose that the polynomial

$$a_0 r^n + a_1 r^{n-1} + \cdots + a_{n-1} r + a_n = 0 \tag{12}$$

has integer coefficients. If $r = p/q$ is a rational root, where p and q have no common factors, then p must be a factor of a_n, and q must be a factor of a_0. For example, in Eq. (8) the factors of a_0 are ± 1 and the factors of a_n are ± 1, ± 2, ± 3, and ± 6. Thus the only possible rational roots of this equation are ± 1, ± 2, ± 3, and ± 6. By testing these possible roots, we find that $1, -1, 2$, and -3 are actual roots. In this case there are no other roots, since the polynomial is of fourth degree. If some of the roots are irrational or complex, as is usually the case, then this process will not find them, but at least the degree of the polynomial can be reduced by dividing the polynomial by the factors corresponding to the rational roots.

If the roots of the characteristic equation are real and different, we have seen that the general solution (5) is simply a sum of exponential functions. For large values of t the solution is dominated by the term corresponding to the algebraically largest root. If this root is positive, then solutions become exponentially unbounded, whereas if it is negative, then solutions tend exponentially to zero. Finally, if the largest root is zero, then solutions approach a nonzero constant as t becomes large. Of course, for certain initial conditions, the coefficient of the otherwise dominant term may be zero; then the nature of the solution for large t is determined by the next largest root.

Complex Roots. If the characteristic equation has complex roots, they must occur in conjugate pairs, $\lambda \pm i\mu$, since the coefficients $a_0, a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ are real numbers. Provided that none of the roots is repeated, the general solution of Eq. (1) is still of the

[2]The method for solving the cubic equation was apparently discovered by Scipione dal Ferro (1465–1526) about 1500, although it was first published in 1545 by Girolamo Cardano (1501–1576) in his *Ars Magna*. This book also contains a method for solving quartic equations that Cardano attributes to his pupil Ludovico Ferrari (1522–1565). The question of whether analogous formulas exist for the roots of higher degree equations remained open for more than two centuries, until 1826, when Niels Abel showed that no general solution formulas can exist for polynomial equations of degree five or higher. A more general theory was developed by Evariste Galois (1811–1832) in 1831, but unfortunately it did not become widely known for several decades.

form of Eq. (5). However, just as for the second order equation (Section 3.3), we can replace the complex-valued solutions $e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}$ and $e^{(\lambda-i\mu)t}$ by the real-valued solutions

$$e^{\lambda t}\cos\mu t, \qquad e^{\lambda t}\sin\mu t \tag{13}$$

obtained as the real and imaginary parts of $e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}$. Thus, even though some of the roots of the characteristic equation are complex, it is still possible to express the general solution of Eq. (1) as a linear combination of real-valued solutions.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the general solution of

$$y^{(4)} - y = 0. \tag{14}$$

Also find the solution that satisfies the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 7/2, \qquad y'(0) = -4, \qquad y''(0) = 5/2, \qquad y'''(0) = -2 \tag{15}$$

and draw its graph.

Substituting e^{rt} for y, we find that the characteristic equation is

$$r^4 - 1 = (r^2 - 1)(r^2 + 1) = 0.$$

Therefore, the roots are $r = 1, -1, i, -i$, and the general solution of Eq. (14) is

$$y = c_1e^t + c_2e^{-t} + c_3\cos t + c_4\sin t.$$

If we impose the initial conditions (15), we obtain

$$c_1 = 0, \qquad c_2 = 3, \qquad c_3 = 1/2, \qquad c_4 = -1;$$

thus the solution of the given initial value problem is

$$y = 3e^{-t} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos t - \sin t. \tag{16}$$

The graph of this solution is shown in Figure 4.2.2.

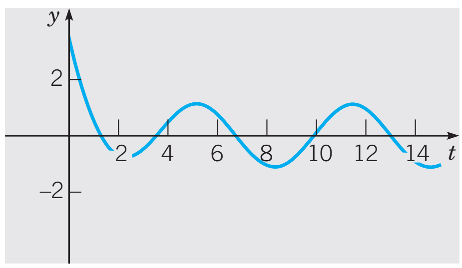


FIGURE 4.2.2 Solution of the initial value problem (14), (15): $y^{(4)} - y = 0,\ y(0) = 7/2,\ y'(0) = -4,\ y''(0) = 5/2,\ y'''(0) = -2.$

Observe that the initial conditions (15) cause the coefficient c_1 of the exponentially growing term in the general solution to be zero. Therefore, this term is absent in the solution (16), which describes an exponential decay to a steady oscillation, as Figure 4.2.2 shows. However, if the initial conditions are changed slightly, then c_1 is likely to be nonzero, and the nature of the solution changes enormously. For example, if the first three initial conditions remain the same, but the value of $y'''(0)$ is changed from -2 to $-15/8$, then the solution of the initial value problem becomes

$$y = \tfrac{1}{32}e^t + \tfrac{95}{32}e^{-t} + \tfrac{1}{2}\cos t - \tfrac{17}{16}\sin t. \tag{17}$$

The coefficients in Eq. (17) differ only slightly from those in Eq. (16), but the exponentially growing term, even with the relatively small coefficient of 1/32, completely dominates the solution by the time t is larger than about 4 or 5. This is clearly seen in Figure 4.2.3, which shows the graphs of the two solutions (16) and (17).

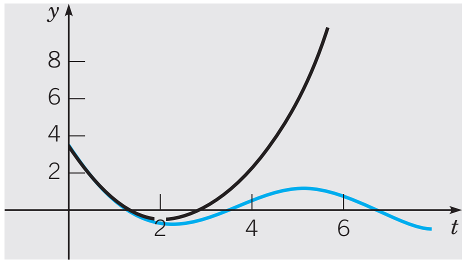


FIGURE 4.2.3 The blue curve is the solution of the initial value problem (14), (15) and is the same as the curve in Figure 4.2.2. The black curve is the solution of the modified problem in which the last initial condition is changed to $y'''(0) = -15/8$.

Repeated Roots. If the roots of the characteristic equation are not distinct—that is, if some of the roots are repeated—then the solution (5) is clearly not the general solution of Eq. (1). Recall that if r_1 is a repeated root for the second order linear equation $a_0y'' + a_1y' + a_2y = 0$, then two linearly independent solutions are e^{r_1t} and te^{r_1t}. For an equation of order n, if a root of $Z(r) = 0$, say $r = r_1$, has multiplicity s (where $s \le n$), then

$$e^{r_1t}, \quad te^{r_1t}, \quad t^2e^{r_1t}, \quad \ldots, \quad t^{s-1}e^{r_1t} \tag{18}$$

are corresponding solutions of Eq. (1). See Problem 41 for a proof of this statement, which is valid whether the repeated root is real or complex.

Note that a complex root can be repeated only if the differential equation (1) is of order four or higher. If a complex root $\lambda + i\mu$ is repeated s times, the complex conjugate $\lambda - i\mu$ is also repeated s times. Corresponding to these $2s$ complex-valued solutions, we can find $2s$ real-valued solutions by noting that the real and imaginary parts of $e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}, te^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}, \ldots, t^{s-1}e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t}$ are also linearly independent solutions:

$$e^{\lambda t}\cos\mu t, \quad e^{\lambda t}\sin\mu t, \quad te^{\lambda t}\cos\mu t, \quad te^{\lambda t}\sin\mu t,$$
$$\ldots, \quad t^{s-1}e^{\lambda t}\cos\mu t, \quad t^{s-1}e^{\lambda t}\sin\mu t.$$

Hence the general solution of Eq. (1) can always be expressed as a linear combination of n real-valued solutions. Consider the following example.

EXAMPLE 3

Find the general solution of

$$y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 0. \tag{19}$$

The characteristic equation is

$$r^4 + 2r^2 + 1 = (r^2 + 1)(r^2 + 1) = 0.$$

The roots are $r = i, i, -i, -i$, and the general solution of Eq. (19) is

$$y = c_1\cos t + c_2\sin t + c_3t\cos t + c_4t\sin t.$$

In determining the roots of the characteristic equation, it may be necessary to compute the cube roots, the fourth roots, or even higher roots of a (possibly complex) number. This can usually be done most conveniently by using Euler's formula $e^{it} = \cos t + i \sin t$ and the algebraic laws given in Section 3.3. This is illustrated in the following example.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the general solution of

$$y^{(4)} + y = 0. \tag{20}$$

The characteristic equation is

$$r^4 + 1 = 0.$$

To solve the equation, we must compute the fourth roots of -1. Now -1, thought of as a complex number, is $-1 + 0i$. It has magnitude 1 and polar angle π. Thus

$$-1 = \cos \pi + i \sin \pi = e^{i\pi}.$$

Moreover, the angle is determined only up to a multiple of 2π. Thus

$$-1 = \cos(\pi + 2m\pi) + i \sin(\pi + 2m\pi) = e^{i(\pi+2m\pi)},$$

where m is zero or any positive or negative integer. Thus

$$(-1)^{1/4} = e^{i(\pi/4+m\pi/2)} = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{m\pi}{2}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{m\pi}{2}\right).$$

The four fourth roots of -1 are obtained by setting $m = 0, 1, 2,$ and 3; they are

$$\frac{1+i}{\sqrt{2}}, \qquad \frac{-1+i}{\sqrt{2}}, \qquad \frac{-1-i}{\sqrt{2}}, \qquad \frac{1-i}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

It is easy to verify that, for any other value of m, we obtain one of these four roots. For example, corresponding to $m = 4$, we obtain $(1 + i)/\sqrt{2}$. The general solution of Eq. (20) is

$$y = e^{t/\sqrt{2}}\left(c_1 \cos \frac{t}{\sqrt{2}} + c_2 \sin \frac{t}{\sqrt{2}}\right) + e^{-t/\sqrt{2}}\left(c_3 \cos \frac{t}{\sqrt{2}} + c_4 \sin \frac{t}{\sqrt{2}}\right). \tag{21}$$

In conclusion, we note that the problem of finding all the roots of a polynomial equation may not be entirely straightforward, even with computer assistance. For instance, it may be difficult to determine whether two roots are equal or merely very close together. Recall that the form of the general solution is different in these two cases.

If the constants $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n$ in Eq. (1) are complex numbers, the solution of Eq. (1) is still of the form (4). In this case, however, the roots of the characteristic equation are, in general, complex numbers, and it is no longer true that the complex conjugate of a root is also a root. The corresponding solutions are complex-valued.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 6, express the given complex number in the form $R(\cos\theta + i \sin\theta) = Re^{i\theta}$.

1. $1 + i$
2. $-1 + \sqrt{3}i$
3. -3
4. $-i$
5. $\sqrt{3} - i$
6. $-1 - i$

In each of Problems 7 through 10, follow the procedure illustrated in Example 4 to determine the indicated roots of the given complex number.

7. $1^{1/3}$
8. $(1 - i)^{1/2}$
9. $1^{1/4}$
10. $[2(\cos \pi/3 + i \sin \pi/3)]^{1/2}$

In each of Problems 11 through 28, find the general solution of the given differential equation.

11. $y''' - y'' - y' + y = 0$
12. $y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = 0$
13. $2y''' - 4y'' - 2y' + 4y = 0$
14. $y^{(4)} - 4y''' + 4y'' = 0$
15. $y^{(6)} + y = 0$
16. $y^{(4)} - 5y'' + 4y = 0$
17. $y^{(6)} - 3y^{(4)} + 3y'' - y = 0$
18. $y^{(6)} - y'' = 0$
19. $y^{(5)} - 3y^{(4)} + 3y''' - 3y'' + 2y' = 0$
20. $y^{(4)} - 8y' = 0$
21. $y^{(8)} + 8y^{(4)} + 16y = 0$
22. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 0$
23. $y''' - 5y'' + 3y' + y = 0$
24. $y''' + 5y'' + 6y' + 2y = 0$
25. $18y''' + 21y'' + 14y' + 4y = 0$
26. $y^{(4)} - 7y''' + 6y'' + 30y' - 36y = 0$
27. $12y^{(4)} + 31y''' + 75y'' + 37y' + 5y = 0$
28. $y^{(4)} + 6y''' + 17y'' + 22y' + 14y = 0$

In each of Problems 29 through 36, find the solution of the given initial value problem, and plot its graph. How does the solution behave as $t \to \infty$?

29. $y''' + y' = 0; \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1, \quad y''(0) = 2$
30. $y^{(4)} + y = 0; \quad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = -1, \quad y'''(0) = 0$
31. $y^{(4)} - 4y''' + 4y'' = 0; \quad y(1) = -1, \quad y'(1) = 2, \quad y''(1) = 0, \quad y'''(1) = 0$
32. $y''' - y'' + y' - y = 0; \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1, \quad y''(0) = -2$
33. $2y^{(4)} - y''' - 9y'' + 4y' + 4y = 0; \quad y(0) = -2, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = -2, \quad y'''(0) = 0$
34. $4y''' + y' + 5y = 0; \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 1, \quad y''(0) = -1$
35. $6y''' + 5y'' + y' = 0; \quad y(0) = -2, \quad y'(0) = 2, \quad y''(0) = 0$
36. $y^{(4)} + 6y''' + 17y'' + 22y' + 14y = 0; \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = -2, \quad y''(0) = 0,$ $y'''(0) = 3$
37. Show that the general solution of $y^{(4)} - y = 0$ can be written as

$$y = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t + c_3 \cosh t + c_4 \sinh t.$$

Determine the solution satisfying the initial conditions $y(0) = 0$, $y'(0) = 0$, $y''(0) = 1$, $y'''(0) = 1$. Why is it convenient to use the solutions $\cosh t$ and $\sinh t$ rather than e^t and e^{-t}?

38. Consider the equation $y^{(4)} - y = 0$.
    (a) Use Abel's formula [Problem 20(d) of Section 4.1] to find the Wronskian of a fundamental set of solutions of the given equation.
    (b) Determine the Wronskian of the solutions e^t, e^{-t}, $\cos t$, and $\sin t$.
    (c) Determine the Wronskian of the solutions $\cosh t$, $\sinh t$, $\cos t$, and $\sin t$.
39. Consider the spring–mass system, shown in Figure 4.2.4, consisting of two unit masses suspended from springs with spring constants 3 and 2, respectively. Assume that there is no damping in the system.
    (a) Show that the displacements u_1 and u_2 of the masses from their respective equilibrium positions satisfy the equations

$$u_1'' + 5u_1 = 2u_2, \qquad u_2'' + 2u_2 = 2u_1. \tag{i}$$

(b) Solve the first of Eqs. (i) for u_2 and substitute into the second equation, thereby obtaining the following fourth order equation for u_1:

$$u_1^{(4)} + 7u_1'' + 6u_1 = 0. \qquad \text{(ii)}$$

Find the general solution of Eq. (ii).

(c) Suppose that the initial conditions are

$$u_1(0) = 1, \qquad u_1'(0) = 0, \qquad u_2(0) = 2, \qquad u_2'(0) = 0. \qquad \text{(iii)}$$

Use the first of Eqs. (i) and the initial conditions (iii) to obtain values for $u_1''(0)$ and $u_1'''(0)$. Then show that the solution of Eq. (ii) that satisfies the four initial conditions on u_1 is $u_1(t) = \cos t$. Show that the corresponding solution u_2 is $u_2(t) = 2\cos t$.

(d) Now suppose that the initial conditions are

$$u_1(0) = -2, \qquad u_1'(0) = 0, \qquad u_2(0) = 1, \qquad u_2'(0) = 0. \qquad \text{(iv)}$$

Proceed as in part (c) to show that the corresponding solutions are $u_1(t) = -2\cos\sqrt{6}\,t$ and $u_2(t) = \cos\sqrt{6}\,t$.

(e) Observe that the solutions obtained in parts (c) and (d) describe two distinct modes of vibration. In the first, the frequency of the motion is 1, and the two masses move in phase, both moving up or down together; the second mass moves twice as far as the first. The second motion has frequency $\sqrt{6}$, and the masses move out of phase with each other, one moving down while the other is moving up, and vice versa. In this mode the first mass moves twice as far as the second. For other initial conditions, not proportional to either of Eqs. (iii) or (iv), the motion of the masses is a combination of these two modes.

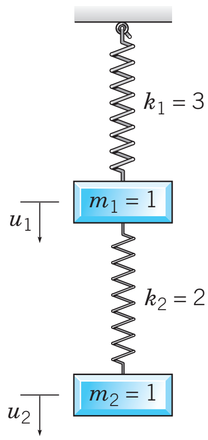


FIGURE 4.2.4 A two-spring, two-mass system.

40. In this problem we outline one way to show that if $r_1, \ldots, r_n$ are all real and different, then $e^{r_1 t}, \ldots, e^{r_n t}$ are linearly independent on $-\infty < t < \infty$. To do this, we consider the linear relation

$$c_1 e^{r_1 t} + \cdots + c_n e^{r_n t} = 0, \qquad -\infty < t < \infty \qquad \text{(i)}$$

and show that all the constants are zero.

(a) Multiply Eq. (i) by $e^{-r_1 t}$ and differentiate with respect to t, thereby obtaining

$$c_2(r_2 - r_1)e^{(r_2 - r_1)t} + \cdots + c_n(r_n - r_1)e^{(r_n - r_1)t} = 0.$$

(b) Multiply the result of part (a) by $e^{-(r_2-r_1)t}$ and differentiate with respect to t to obtain

$$c_3(r_3-r_2)(r_3-r_1)e^{(r_3-r_2)t}+\cdots+c_n(r_n-r_2)(r_n-r_1)e^{(r_n-r_2)t}=0.$$

(c) Continue the procedure from parts (a) and (b), eventually obtaining

$$c_n(r_n-r_{n-1})\cdots(r_n-r_1)e^{(r_n-r_{n-1})t}=0.$$

Hence $c_n=0$, and therefore,

$$c_1e^{r_1t}+\cdots+c_{n-1}e^{r_{n-1}t}=0.$$

(d) Repeat the preceding argument to show that $c_{n-1}=0$. In a similar way it follows that $c_{n-2}=\cdots=c_1=0$. Thus the functions $e^{r_1t},\ldots,e^{r_nt}$ are linearly independent.

41. In this problem we indicate one way to show that if $r=r_1$ is a root of multiplicity s of the characteristic polynomial $Z(r)$, then $e^{r_1t},\ te^{r_1t},\ldots,\ t^{s-1}e^{r_1t}$ are solutions of Eq. (1). This problem extends to nth order equations the method for second order equations given in Problem 22 of Section 3.4. We start from Eq. (2) in the text

$$L[e^{rt}]=e^{rt}Z(r) \tag{i}$$

and differentiate repeatedly with respect to r, setting $r=r_1$ after each differentiation.

(a) Observe that if r_1 is a root of multiplicity s, then $Z(r)=(r-r_1)^sq(r)$, where $q(r)$ is a polynomial of degree $n-s$ and $q(r_1)\neq 0$. Show that $Z(r_1), Z'(r_1),\ldots,Z^{(s-1)}(r_1)$ are all zero, but $Z^{(s)}(r_1)\neq 0$.

(b) By differentiating Eq. (i) repeatedly with respect to r, show that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial r}L[e^{rt}]=L\left[\frac{\partial}{\partial r}e^{rt}\right]=L[te^{rt}],$$
$$\vdots$$
$$\frac{\partial^{s-1}}{\partial r^{s-1}}L[e^{rt}]=L[t^{s-1}e^{rt}].$$

(c) Show that $e^{r_1t}, te^{r_1t},\ldots,t^{s-1}e^{r_1t}$ are solutions of Eq. (1).

4.3 The Method of Undetermined Coefficients

A particular solution Y of the nonhomogeneous nth order linear equation with constant coefficients

$$L[y]=a_0y^{(n)}+a_1y^{(n-1)}+\cdots+a_{n-1}y'+a_ny=g(t) \tag{1}$$

can be obtained by the method of undetermined coefficients, provided that $g(t)$ is of an appropriate form. Although the method of undetermined coefficients is not as general as the method of variation of parameters described in the next section, it is usually much easier to use when it is applicable.

Just as for the second order linear equation, when the constant coefficient linear differential operator L is applied to a polynomial $A_0t^m+A_1t^{m-1}+\cdots+A_m$, an exponential function $e^{\alpha t}$, a sine function $\sin \beta t$, or a cosine function $\cos \beta t$, the result is a polynomial, an exponential function, or a linear combination of sine and cosine functions, respectively. Hence, if $g(t)$ is a sum of polynomials, exponentials, sines, and cosines, or products of such functions, we can expect that it is possible to find $Y(t)$ by choosing a suitable combination of polynomials, exponentials, and so forth, multiplied by a number of undetermined constants. The constants are then determined by substituting the assumed expression into Eq. (1).

The main difference in using this method for higher order equations stems from the fact that roots of the characteristic polynomial equation may have multiplicity greater than 2. Consequently, terms proposed for the nonhomogeneous part of the solution may need to be multiplied by higher powers of t to make them different from terms in the solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation. The following examples illustrate this. In these examples we have omitted numerous straightforward algebraic steps, because our main goal is to show how to arrive at the correct form for the assumed solution.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of

$$y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = 4e^t. \tag{2}$$

The characteristic polynomial for the homogeneous equation corresponding to Eq. (2) is

$$r^3 - 3r^2 + 3r - 1 = (r-1)^3,$$

so the general solution of the homogeneous equation is

$$y_c(t) = c_1 e^t + c_2 t e^t + c_3 t^2 e^t. \tag{3}$$

To find a particular solution $Y(t)$ of Eq. (2), we start by assuming that $Y(t) = Ae^t$. However, since e^t, te^t, and t^2e^t are all solutions of the homogeneous equation, we must multiply this initial choice by t^3. Thus our final assumption is that $Y(t) = At^3e^t$, where A is an undetermined coefficient. To find the correct value for A, we differentiate $Y(t)$ three times, substitute for y and its derivatives in Eq. (2), and collect terms in the resulting equation. In this way we obtain

$$6Ae^t = 4e^t.$$

Thus $A = \frac{2}{3}$ and the particular solution is

$$Y(t) = \tfrac{2}{3}t^3e^t. \tag{4}$$

The general solution of Eq. (2) is the sum of $y_c(t)$ from Eq. (3) and $Y(t)$ from Eq. (4):

$$y = c_1 e^t + c_2 t e^t + c_3 t^2 e^t + \tfrac{2}{3}t^3 e^t.$$

EXAMPLE 2

Find a particular solution of the equation

$$y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 3\sin t - 5\cos t. \tag{5}$$

The general solution of the homogeneous equation was found in Example 3 of Section 4.2; it is

$$y_c(t) = c_1 \cos t + c_2 \sin t + c_3 t\cos t + c_4 t \sin t, \tag{6}$$

corresponding to the roots $r = i, i, -i$, and $-i$ of the characteristic equation. Our initial assumption for a particular solution is $Y(t) = A\sin t + B\cos t$, but we must multiply this choice by t^2 to make it different from all solutions of the homogeneous equation. Thus our final assumption is

$$Y(t) = At^2 \sin t + Bt^2 \cos t.$$

Next, we differentiate $Y(t)$ four times, substitute into the differential equation (4), and collect terms, obtaining finally

$$-8A\sin t - 8B\cos t = 3\sin t - 5\cos t.$$

Thus $A = -\frac{3}{8}$, $B = \frac{5}{8}$, and the particular solution of Eq. (4) is

$$Y(t) = -\tfrac{3}{8}t^2 \sin t + \tfrac{5}{8}t^2 \cos t. \tag{7}$$

If $g(t)$ is a sum of several terms, it may be easier in practice to compute separately the particular solution corresponding to each term in $g(t)$. As for the second order equation, the particular solution of the complete problem is the sum of the particular solutions of the individual component problems. This is illustrated in the following example.

EXAMPLE 3

Find a particular solution of

$$y''' - 4y' = t + 3\cos t + e^{-2t}. \tag{8}$$

First we solve the homogeneous equation. The characteristic equation is $r^3 - 4r = 0$, and the roots are $r = 0, \pm 2$; hence

$$y_c(t) = c_1 + c_2 e^{2t} + c_3 e^{-2t}.$$

We can write a particular solution of Eq. (8) as the sum of particular solutions of the differential equations

$$y''' - 4y' = t, \qquad y''' - 4y' = 3\cos t, \qquad y''' - 4y' = e^{-2t}.$$

Our initial choice for a particular solution $Y_1(t)$ of the first equation is $A_0 t + A_1$, but a constant is a solution of the homogeneous equation, so we multiply by t. Thus

$$Y_1(t) = t(A_0 t + A_1).$$

For the second equation we choose

$$Y_2(t) = B\cos t + C\sin t,$$

and there is no need to modify this initial choice since $\sin t$ and $\cos t$ are not solutions of the homogeneous equation. Finally, for the third equation, since e^{-2t} is a solution of the homogeneous equation, we assume that

$$Y_3(t) = Ete^{-2t}.$$

The constants are determined by substituting into the individual differential equations; they are $A_0 = -\frac{1}{8}$, $A_1 = 0$, $B = 0$, $C = -\frac{3}{5}$, and $E = \frac{1}{8}$. Hence a particular solution of Eq. (8) is

$$Y(t) = -\tfrac{1}{8}t^2 - \tfrac{3}{5}\sin t + \tfrac{1}{8}te^{-2t}. \tag{9}$$

You should keep in mind that the amount of algebra required to calculate the coefficients may be quite substantial for higher order equations, especially if the nonhomogeneous term is even moderately complicated. A computer algebra system can be extremely helpful in executing these algebraic calculations.

The method of undetermined coefficients can be used whenever it is possible to guess the correct form for $Y(t)$. However, this is usually impossible for differential equations not having constant coefficients, or for nonhomogeneous terms other than the type described previously. For more complicated problems we can use the method of variation of parameters, which is discussed in the next section.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 8, determine the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y''' - y'' - y' + y = 2e^{-t} + 3$
2. $y^{(4)} - y = 3t + \cos t$
3. $y''' + y'' + y' + y = e^{-t} + 4t$
4. $y''' - y' = 2\sin t$
5. $y^{(4)} - 4y'' = t^2 + e^t$
6. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 3 + \cos 2t$
7. $y^{(6)} + y''' = t$
8. $y^{(4)} + y''' = \sin 2t$

In each of Problems 9 through 12, find the solution of the given initial value problem. Then plot a graph of the solution.

9. $y''' + 4y' = t; \qquad y(0) = y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = 1$
10. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = 3t + 4; \qquad y(0) = y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = y'''(0) = 1$
11. $y''' - 3y'' + 2y' = t + e^t; \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = -\frac{1}{4}, \quad y''(0) = -\frac{3}{2}$
12. $y^{(4)} + 2y''' + y'' + 8y' - 12y = 12\sin t - e^{-t}; \qquad y(0) = 3, \quad y'(0) = 0,$
    $y''(0) = -1, \quad y'''(0) = 2$

In each of Problems 13 through 18, determine a suitable form for $Y(t)$ if the method of undetermined coefficients is to be used. Do not evaluate the constants.

13. $y''' - 2y'' + y' = t^3 + 2e^t$
14. $y''' - y' = te^{-t} + 2\cos t$
15. $y^{(4)} - 2y'' + y = e^t + \sin t$
16. $y^{(4)} + 4y'' = \sin 2t + te^t + 4$
17. $y^{(4)} - y''' - y'' + y' = t^2 + 4 + t\sin t$
18. $y^{(4)} + 2y''' + 2y'' = 3e^t + 2te^{-t} + e^{-t}\sin t$

19. Consider the nonhomogeneous nth order linear differential equation

$$a_0 y^{(n)} + a_1 y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_n y = g(t), \tag{i}$$

where $a_0, \ldots, a_n$ are constants. Verify that if $g(t)$ is of the form

$$e^{\alpha t}(b_0 t^m + \cdots + b_m),$$

then the substitution $y = e^{\alpha t}u(t)$ reduces Eq. (i) to the form

$$k_0 u^{(n)} + k_1 u^{(n-1)} + \cdots + k_n u = b_0 t^m + \cdots + b_m, \tag{ii}$$

where $k_0, \ldots, k_n$ are constants. Determine k_0 and k_n in terms of the a's and α. Thus the problem of determining a particular solution of the original equation is reduced to the simpler problem of determining a particular solution of an equation with constant coefficients and a polynomial for the nonhomogeneous term.

Method of Annihilators. In Problems 20 through 22, we consider another way of arriving at the proper form of $Y(t)$ for use in the method of undetermined coefficients. The procedure is based on the observation that exponential, polynomial, or sinusoidal terms (or sums and products of such terms) can be viewed as solutions of certain linear homogeneous differential equations with constant coefficients. It is convenient to use the symbol D for d/dt. Then, for example, e^{-t} is a solution of $(D+1)y = 0$; the differential operator $D+1$ is said to *annihilate*, or to be an *annihilator* of, e^{-t}. In the same way, $D^2 + 4$ is an annihilator of $\sin 2t$ or $\cos 2t$, $(D-3)^2 = D^2 - 6D + 9$ is an annihilator of e^{3t} or te^{3t}, and so forth.

20. Show that linear differential operators with constant coefficients obey the commutative law. That is, show that

$$(D-a)(D-b)f = (D-b)(D-a)f$$

for any twice-differentiable function f and any constants a and b. The result extends at once to any finite number of factors.

21. Consider the problem of finding the form of a particular solution $Y(t)$ of

$$(D-2)^3(D+1)Y = 3e^{2t} - te^{-t}, \tag{i}$$

where the left side of the equation is written in a form corresponding to the factorization of the characteristic polynomial.

(a) Show that $D-2$ and $(D+1)^2$, respectively, are annihilators of the terms on the right side of Eq. (i), and that the combined operator $(D-2)(D+1)^2$ annihilates both terms on the right side of Eq. (i) simultaneously.

(b) Apply the operator $(D-2)(D+1)^2$ to Eq. (i) and use the result of Problem 20 to obtain

$$(D-2)^4(D+1)^3Y = 0. \tag{ii}$$

Thus Y is a solution of the homogeneous equation (ii). By solving Eq. (ii), show that

$$Y(t) = c_1e^{2t} + c_2te^{2t} + c_3t^2e^{2t} + c_4t^3e^{2t} + c_5e^{-t} + c_6te^{-t} + c_7t^2e^{-t}, \tag{iii}$$

where $c_1, \dots, c_7$ are constants, as yet undetermined.

(c) Observe that e^{2t}, te^{2t}, t^2e^{2t}, and e^{-t} are solutions of the homogeneous equation corresponding to Eq. (i); hence these terms are not useful in solving the nonhomogeneous equation. Therefore, choose c_1, c_2, c_3, and c_5 to be zero in Eq. (iii), so that

$$Y(t) = c_4t^3e^{2t} + c_6te^{-t} + c_7t^2e^{-t}. \tag{iv}$$

This is the form of the particular solution Y of Eq. (i). The values of the coefficients c_4, c_6, and c_7 can be found by substituting from Eq. (iv) in the differential equation (i).

Summary. Suppose that

$$L(D)y = g(t), \tag{v}$$

where $L(D)$ is a linear differential operator with constant coefficients, and $g(t)$ is a sum or product of exponential, polynomial, or sinusoidal terms. To find the form of a particular solution of Eq. (v), you can proceed as follows:

(a) Find a differential operator $H(D)$ with constant coefficients that annihilates $g(t)$—that is, an operator such that $H(D)g(t) = 0$.

(b) Apply $H(D)$ to Eq. (v), obtaining

$$H(D)L(D)y = 0, \tag{vi}$$

which is a homogeneous equation of higher order.

(c) Solve Eq. (vi).

(d) Eliminate from the solution found in step (c) the terms that also appear in the solution of $L(D)y = 0$. The remaining terms constitute the correct form of a particular solution of Eq. (v).

22. Use the method of annihilators to find the form of a particular solution $Y(t)$ for each of the equations in Problems 13 through 18. Do not evaluate the coefficients.

4.4 The Method of Variation of Parameters

The method of variation of parameters for determining a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous nth order linear differential equation

$$L[y] = y^{(n)} + p_1(t)y^{(n-1)} + \cdots + p_{n-1}(t)y' + p_n(t)y = g(t) \tag{1}$$

is a direct extension of the method for the second order differential equation (see Section 3.6). As before, to use the method of variation of parameters, it is first necessary to solve the corresponding homogeneous differential equation. In general, this may be difficult unless the coefficients are constants. However, the method of variation of parameters is still more general than the method of undetermined coefficients in that it leads to an expression for the particular solution for *any* continuous function g, whereas the method of undetermined coefficients is restricted in practice to a limited class of functions g.

Suppose then that we know a fundamental set of solutions $y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n$ of the homogeneous equation. Then the general solution of the homogeneous equation is

$$y_c(t) = c_1y_1(t) + c_2y_2(t) + \cdots + c_ny_n(t). \tag{2}$$

The method of variation of parameters for determining a particular solution of Eq. (1) rests on the possibility of determining n functions $u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n$ such that $Y(t)$ is of the form

$$Y(t) = u_1(t)y_1(t) + u_2(t)y_2(t) + \cdots + u_n(t)y_n(t). \tag{3}$$

Since we have n functions to determine, we will have to specify n conditions. One of these is clearly that Y satisfy Eq. (1). The other $n-1$ conditions are chosen so as to make the calculations as simple as possible. Since we can hardly expect a simplification in determining Y if we must solve high order differential equations for $u_1, \ldots, u_n$, it is natural to impose conditions to suppress the terms that lead to higher derivatives of $u_1, \ldots, u_n$. From Eq. (3) we obtain

$$Y' = (u_1y_1' + u_2y_2' + \cdots + u_ny_n') + (u_1'y_1 + u_2'y_2 + \cdots + u_n'y_n), \tag{4}$$

where we have omitted the independent variable t on which each function in Eq. (4) depends. Thus the first condition that we impose is that

$$u_1'y_1 + u_2'y_2 + \cdots + u_n'y_n = 0. \tag{5}$$

It follows that the expression (4) for Y' reduces to

$$Y' = u_1y_1' + u_2y_2' + \cdots + u_ny_n'. \tag{6}$$

We continue this process by calculating the successive derivatives $Y'', \ldots, Y^{(n-1)}$. After each differentiation we set equal to zero the sum of terms involving derivatives of $u_1, \ldots, u_n$. In this way we obtain $n-2$ further conditions similar to Eq. (5); that is,

$$u_1'y_1^{(m)} + u_2'y_2^{(m)} + \cdots + u_n'y_n^{(m)} = 0, \qquad m = 1, 2, \ldots, n-2. \tag{7}$$

As a result of these conditions, it follows that the expressions for $Y'', \ldots, Y^{(n-1)}$ reduce to

$$Y^{(m)} = u_1y_1^{(m)} + u_2y_2^{(m)} + \cdots + u_ny_n^{(m)}, \qquad m = 2, 3, \ldots, n-1, \tag{8}$$

Finally, we need to impose the condition that Y must be a solution of Eq. (1). By differentiating $Y^{(n-1)}$ from Eq. (8), we obtain

$$Y^{(n)} = (u_1 y_1^{(n)} + \cdots + u_n y_n^{(n)}) + (u_1' y_1^{(n-1)} + \cdots + u_n' y_n^{(n-1)}). \tag{9}$$

To satisfy the differential equation we substitute for Y and its derivatives in Eq. (1) from Eqs. (3), (6), (8), and (9). Then we group the terms involving each of the functions $y_1, \dots, y_n$ and their derivatives. It then follows that most of the terms in the equation drop out because each of $y_1, \dots, y_n$ is a solution of Eq. (1) and therefore $L[y_i] = 0,\ i = 1, 2, \dots, n$. The remaining terms yield the relation

$$u_1' y_1^{(n-1)} + u_2' y_2^{(n-1)} + \cdots + u_n' y_n^{(n-1)} = g. \tag{10}$$

Equation (10), Eq. (5), and the $n-2$ equations (7) provide n simultaneous linear nonhomogeneous algebraic equations for $u_1', u_2', \dots, u_n'$:

$$\begin{aligned}
y_1 u_1' + y_2 u_2' + \cdots + y_n u_n' &= 0, \\
y_1' u_1' + y_2' u_2' + \cdots + y_n' u_n' &= 0, \\
y_1'' u_1' + y_2'' u_2' + \cdots + y_n'' u_n' &= 0, \\
&\ \vdots \\
y_1^{(n-1)} u_1' + \cdots + y_n^{(n-1)} u_n' &= g.
\end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

The system (11) is a linear algebraic system for the unknown quantities $u_1', \dots, u_n'$. By solving this system and then integrating the resulting expressions, you can obtain the coefficients $u_1, \dots, u_n$. A sufficient condition for the existence of a solution of the system of equations (11) is that the determinant of coefficients is nonzero for each value of t. However, the determinant of coefficients is precisely $W(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)$, and it is nowhere zero since $y_1, \dots, y_n$ is a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous equation. Hence it is possible to determine $u_1', \dots, u_n'$. Using Cramer's[3] rule, we can write the solution of the system of equations (11) in the form

$$u_m'(t) = \frac{g(t) W_m(t)}{W(t)}, \qquad m = 1, 2, \dots, n. \tag{12}$$

Here $W(t) = W(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)(t)$, and W_m is the determinant obtained from W by replacing the mth column by the column $(0, 0, \dots, 0, 1)$. With this notation a particular solution of Eq. (1) is given by

$$Y(t) = \sum_{m=1}^{n} y_m(t) \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{g(s) W_m(s)}{W(s)}\, ds, \tag{13}$$

where t_0 is arbitrary. Although the procedure is straightforward, the algebraic computations involved in determining $Y(t)$ from Eq. (13) become more and more

[3]Cramer's rule is credited to the Swiss mathematician Gabriel Cramer (1704–1752), professor at the Académie de Calvin in Geneva, who published it in a general form (but without proof) in 1750. For small systems the result had been known earlier.

complicated as n increases. In some cases the calculations may be simplified to some extent by using Abel's identity (Problem 20 of Section 4.1),

$$W(t) = W(y_1, \dots, y_n)(t) = c \exp\left[-\int p_1(t)\,dt\right].$$

The constant c can be determined by evaluating W at some convenient point.

EXAMPLE 1

Given that $y_1(t) = e^t$, $y_2(t) = te^t$, and $y_3(t) = e^{-t}$ are solutions of the homogeneous equation corresponding to

$$y''' - y'' - y' + y = g(t), \tag{14}$$

determine a particular solution of Eq. (14) in terms of an integral.

We use Eq. (13). First, we have

$$W(t) = W(e^t, te^t, e^{-t})(t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^t & te^t & e^{-t} \\ e^t & (t+1)e^t & -e^{-t} \\ e^t & (t+2)e^t & e^{-t} \end{vmatrix}.$$

Factoring e^t from each of the first two columns and e^{-t} from the third column, we obtain

$$W(t) = e^t \begin{vmatrix} 1 & t & 1 \\ 1 & t+1 & -1 \\ 1 & t+2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}.$$

Then, by subtracting the first row from the second and third rows, we have

$$W(t) = e^t \begin{vmatrix} 1 & t & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix}.$$

Finally, evaluating the latter determinant by minors associated with the first column, we find that

$$W(t) = 4e^t.$$

Next,

$$W_1(t) = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & te^t & e^{-t} \\ 0 & (t+1)e^t & -e^{-t} \\ 1 & (t+2)e^t & e^{-t} \end{vmatrix}.$$

Using minors associated with the first column, we obtain

$$W_1(t) = \begin{vmatrix} te^t & e^{-t} \\ (t+1)e^t & -e^{-t} \end{vmatrix} = -2t - 1.$$

In a similar way,

$$W_2(t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^t & 0 & e^{-t} \\ e^t & 0 & -e^{-t} \\ e^t & 1 & e^{-t} \end{vmatrix} = -\begin{vmatrix} e^t & e^{-t} \\ e^t & -e^{-t} \end{vmatrix} = 2$$

and

$$W_3(t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^t & te^t & 0 \\ e^t & (t+1)e^t & 0 \\ e^t & (t+2)e^t & 1 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} e^t & te^t \\ e^t & (t+1)e^t \end{vmatrix} = e^{2t}.$$

Substituting these results in Eq. (13), we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y(t) &= e^t \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{g(s)(-1-2s)}{4e^s}\, ds + te^t \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{g(s)(2)}{4e^s}\, ds + e^{-t} \int_{t_0}^{t} \frac{g(s)e^{2s}}{4e^s}\, ds \\ &= \frac{1}{4}\int_{t_0}^{t} \left\{ e^{t-s}[-1+2(t-s)] + e^{-(t-s)} \right\} g(s)\, ds. \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

Depending on the specific function $g(t)$, it may or may not be possible to evaluate the integrals in Eq. (15) in terms of elementary functions.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 6, use the method of variation of parameters to determine the general solution of the given differential equation.

1. $y''' + y' = \tan t, \quad -\pi/2 < t < \pi/2$
2. $y''' - y' = t$
3. $y''' - 2y'' - y' + 2y = e^{4t}$
4. $y''' + y' = \sec t, \quad -\pi/2 < t < \pi/2$
5. $y''' - y'' + y' - y = e^{-t}\sin t$
6. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = \sin t$

In each of Problems 7 and 8, find the general solution of the given differential equation. Leave your answer in terms of one or more integrals.

7. $y''' - y'' + y' - y = \sec t, \quad -\pi/2 < t < \pi/2$
8. $y''' - y' = \csc t, \quad 0 < t < \pi$

In each of Problems 9 through 12, find the solution of the given initial value problem. Then plot a graph of the solution.

9. $y''' + y' = \sec t; \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 1, \quad y''(0) = -2$
10. $y^{(4)} + 2y'' + y = \sin t; \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = -1, \quad y'''(0) = 1$
11. $y''' - y'' + y' - y = \sec t; \quad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1, \quad y''(0) = 1$
12. $y''' - y' = \csc t; \quad y(\pi/2) = 2, \quad y'(\pi/2) = 1, \quad y''(\pi/2) = -1$

13. Given that x, x^2, and $1/x$ are solutions of the homogeneous equation corresponding to

$$x^3y''' + x^2y'' - 2xy' + 2y = 2x^4, \qquad x > 0,$$

determine a particular solution.

14. Find a formula involving integrals for a particular solution of the differential equation

$$y''' - y'' + y' - y = g(t).$$

15. Find a formula involving integrals for a particular solution of the differential equation

$$y^{(4)} - y = g(t).$$

Hint: The functions $\sin t$, $\cos t$, $\sinh t$, and $\cosh t$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the homogeneous equation.

16. Find a formula involving integrals for a particular solution of the differential equation

$$y''' - 3y'' + 3y' - y = g(t).$$

If $g(t) = t^{-2}e^t$, determine $Y(t)$.

17. Find a formula involving integrals for a particular solution of the differential equation

$$x^3y''' - 3x^2y'' + 6xy' - 6y = g(x), \qquad x > 0.$$

Hint: Verify that x, x^2, and x^3 are solutions of the homogeneous equation.

REFERENCES

Coddington, E. A., *An Introduction to Ordinary Differential Equations* (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1961; New York: Dover, 1989).

Coddington, E. A. and Carlson, R., *Linear Ordinary Differential Equations* (Philadelphia, PA: Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, 1997).

CHAPTER

6

The Laplace Transform

Many practical engineering problems involve mechanical or electrical systems acted on by discontinuous or impulsive forcing terms. For such problems the methods described in Chapter 3 are often rather awkward to use. Another method that is especially well suited to these problems, although useful much more generally, is based on the Laplace transform. In this chapter we describe how this important method works, emphasizing problems typical of those that arise in engineering applications.

6.1 Definition of the Laplace Transform

Improper Integrals. Since the Laplace transform involves an integral from zero to infinity, a knowledge of improper integrals of this type is necessary to appreciate the subsequent development of the properties of the transform. We provide a brief review of such improper integrals here. If you are already familiar with improper integrals, you may wish to skip over this review. On the other hand, if improper integrals are new to you, then you should probably consult a calculus book, where you will find many more details and examples.

An improper integral over an unbounded interval is defined as a limit of integrals over finite intervals; thus

$$\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_a^A f(t)\,dt, \tag{1}$$

where A is a positive real number. If the integral from a to A exists for each $A > a$, and if the limit as $A \to \infty$ exists, then the improper integral is said to **converge** to that limiting value. Otherwise the integral is said to **diverge**, or to fail to exist. The following examples illustrate both possibilities.

EXAMPLE 1

Let $f(t) = e^{ct},\ t \geq 0$, where c is a real nonzero constant. Then

$$\int_0^\infty e^{ct}\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_0^A e^{ct}\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\left.\frac{e^{ct}}{c}\right|_0^A$$

$$= \lim_{A\to\infty}\frac{1}{c}(e^{cA}-1).$$

It follows that the improper integral converges to the value $-1/c$ if $c < 0$ and diverges if $c > 0$. If $c = 0$, the integrand $f(t)$ is the constant function with value 1. In this case

$$\lim_{A\to\infty}\int_0^A 1\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}(A-0) = \infty,$$

so the integral again diverges.

EXAMPLE 2

Let $f(t) = 1/t,\ t \geq 1$. Then

$$\int_1^\infty \frac{dt}{t} = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_1^A \frac{dt}{t} = \lim_{A\to\infty}\ln A.$$

Since $\lim\limits_{A\to\infty}\ln A = \infty$, the improper integral diverges.

EXAMPLE 3

Let $f(t) = t^{-p},\ t \geq 1$, where p is a real constant and $p \neq 1$; the case $p = 1$ was considered in Example 2. Then

$$\int_1^\infty t^{-p}\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\int_1^A t^{-p}\,dt = \lim_{A\to\infty}\frac{1}{1-p}(A^{1-p}-1).$$

As $A \to \infty$, $A^{1-p} \to 0$ if $p > 1$, but $A^{1-p} \to \infty$ if $p < 1$. Hence $\int_1^\infty t^{-p}\,dt$ converges to the value $1/(p-1)$ for $p > 1$ but (incorporating the result of Example 2) diverges for $p \leq 1$. These results are analogous to those for the infinite series $\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{-p}$.

Before discussing the possible existence of $\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$, it is helpful to define certain terms. A function f is said to be **piecewise continuous** on an interval $\alpha \leq t \leq \beta$ if the interval[1] can be partitioned by a finite number of points $\alpha = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_n = \beta$ so that

1. f is continuous on each open subinterval $t_{i-1} < t < t_i$.
2. f approaches a finite limit as the endpoints of each subinterval are approached from within the subinterval.

In other words, f is piecewise continuous on $\alpha \leq t \leq \beta$ if it is continuous there except for a finite number of jump discontinuities. If f is piecewise continuous on $\alpha \leq t \leq \beta$ for every $\beta > \alpha$, then f is said to be piecewise continuous on $t \geq \alpha$. An example of a piecewise continuous function is shown in Figure 6.1.1.

[1] It is not essential that the interval be closed; the same definition applies if the interval is open at one or both ends.

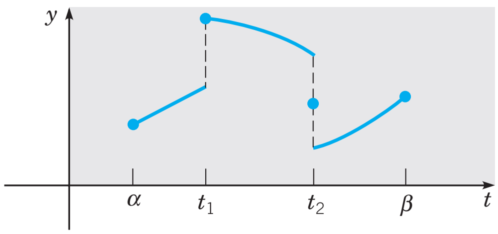


FIGURE 6.1.1 A piecewise continuous function $y = f(t)$.

The integral of a piecewise continuous function on a finite interval is just the sum of the integrals on the subintervals created by the partition points. For instance, for the function $f(t)$ shown in Figure 6.1.1, we have

$$\int_\alpha^\beta f(t)\,dt = \int_\alpha^{t_1} f(t)\,dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} f(t)\,dt + \int_{t_2}^{\beta} f(t)\,dt. \tag{2}$$

For the function shown in Figure 6.1.1, we have assigned values to the function at the endpoints α and β and at the partition points t_1 and t_2. However, as far as the integrals in Eq. (2) are concerned, it does not matter whether $f(t)$ is defined at these points, or what values may be assigned to $f(t)$ at them. The values of the integrals in Eq. (2) remain the same regardless.

Thus, if f is piecewise continuous on the interval $a \le t \le A$, then $\displaystyle\int_a^A f(t)\,dt$ exists. Hence, if f is piecewise continuous for $t \ge a$, then $\displaystyle\int_a^A f(t)\,dt$ exists for each $A > a$. However, piecewise continuity is not enough to ensure convergence of the improper integral $\displaystyle\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$, as the preceding examples show.

If f cannot be integrated easily in terms of elementary functions, the definition of convergence of $\displaystyle\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$ may be difficult to apply. Frequently, the most convenient way to test the convergence or divergence of an improper integral is by the following comparison theorem, which is analogous to a similar theorem for infinite series.

Theorem 6.1.1

If f is piecewise continuous for $t \ge a$, if $|f(t)| \le g(t)$ when $t \ge M$ for some positive constant M, and if $\displaystyle\int_M^\infty g(t)\,dt$ converges, then $\displaystyle\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$ also converges. On the other hand, if $f(t) \ge g(t) \ge 0$ for $t \ge M$, and if $\displaystyle\int_M^\infty g(t)\,dt$ diverges, then $\displaystyle\int_a^\infty f(t)\,dt$ also diverges.

The proof of this result from calculus will not be given here. It is made plausible, however, by comparing the areas represented by $\displaystyle\int_M^\infty g(t)\,dt$ and $\displaystyle\int_M^\infty |f(t)|\,dt$. The functions most useful for comparison purposes are e^{ct} and t^{-p}, which we considered in Examples 1, 2, and 3.

The Laplace Transform. Among the tools that are very useful for solving linear differential equations are **integral transforms**. An integral transform is a relation of the form

$$F(s) = \int_{\alpha}^{\beta} K(s,t) f(t)\, dt, \tag{3}$$

where $K(s,t)$ is a given function, called the **kernel** of the transformation, and the limits of integration α and β are also given. It is possible that $\alpha = -\infty$, or $\beta = \infty$, or both. The relation (3) transforms the function f into another function F, which is called the **transform** of f.

There are several integral transforms that are useful in applied mathematics, but in this chapter we consider only the Laplace[2] transform. This transform is defined in the following way. Let $f(t)$ be given for $t \geq 0$, and suppose that f satisfies certain conditions to be stated a little later. Then the Laplace transform of f, which we will denote by $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ or by $F(s)$, is defined by the equation

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = F(s) = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-st} f(t)\, dt, \tag{4}$$

whenever this improper integral converges. The Laplace transform makes use of the kernel $K(s,t) = e^{-st}$. Since the solutions of linear differential equations with constant coefficients are based on the exponential function, the Laplace transform is particularly useful for such equations. The general idea in using the Laplace transform to solve a differential equation is as follows:

1. Use the relation (4) to transform an initial value problem for an unknown function f in the t-domain into a simpler problem (indeed, an algebraic problem) for F in the s-domain.
2. Solve this algebraic problem to find F.
3. Recover the desired function f from its transform F. This last step is known as "inverting the transform."

In general, the parameter s may be complex, and the full power of the Laplace transform becomes available only when we regard $F(s)$ as a function of a complex variable. However, for the problems discussed here, it is sufficient to consider only real values of s. The Laplace transform F of a function f exists if f satisfies certain conditions, such as those stated in the following theorem.

Theorem 6.1.2 Suppose that

1. f is piecewise continuous on the interval $0 \leq t \leq A$ for any positive A.
2. $|f(t)| \leq Ke^{at}$ when $t \geq M$. In this inequality, K, a, and M are real constants, K and M necessarily positive.

Then the Laplace transform $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = F(s)$, defined by Eq. (4), exists for $s > a$.

---

[2]The Laplace transform is named for the eminent French mathematician P. S. Laplace, who studied the relation (3) in 1782. However, the techniques described in this chapter were not developed until a century or more later. We owe them mainly to Oliver Heaviside (1850–1925), an innovative self-taught English electrical engineer, who made significant contributions to the development and application of electromagnetic theory. He was also one of the developers of vector calculus.

To establish this theorem, we must show that the integral in Eq. (4) converges for $s > a$. Splitting the improper integral into two parts, we have

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-st} f(t)\, dt = \int_0^M e^{-st} f(t)\, dt + \int_M^\infty e^{-st} f(t)\, dt. \tag{5}$$

The first integral on the right side of Eq. (5) exists by hypothesis (1) of the theorem; hence the existence of $F(s)$ depends on the convergence of the second integral. By hypothesis (2) we have, for $t \geq M$,

$$|e^{-st} f(t)| \leq Ke^{-st}e^{at} = Ke^{(a-s)t},$$

and thus, by Theorem 6.1.1, $F(s)$ exists provided that $\int_M^\infty e^{(a-s)t}\, dt$ converges. Referring to Example 1 with c replaced by $a - s$, we see that this latter integral converges when $a - s < 0$, which establishes Theorem 6.1.2.

In this chapter (except in Section 6.5), we deal almost exclusively with functions that satisfy the conditions of Theorem 6.1.2. Such functions are described as piecewise continuous and of **exponential order** as $t \to \infty$. Note that there are functions that are not of exponential order as $t \to \infty$. One such function is $f(t) = e^{t^2}$. As $t \to \infty$, this function increases faster than Ke^{at} regardless of how large the constants K and a may be.

The Laplace transforms of some important elementary functions are given in the following examples.

EXAMPLE 4

Let $f(t) = 1,\ t \geq 0$. Then, as in Example 1,

$$\mathcal{L}\{1\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-st}\, dt = -\lim_{A\to\infty} \left.\frac{e^{-st}}{s}\right|_0^A = \frac{1}{s}, \qquad s > 0.$$

EXAMPLE 5

Let $f(t) = e^{at},\ t \geq 0$. Then, again referring to Example 1,

$$\mathcal{L}\{e^{at}\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-st}e^{at}\, dt = \int_0^\infty e^{-(s-a)t}\, dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{s-a}, \qquad s > a.$$

EXAMPLE 6

Let

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \leq t < 1, \\ k, & t = 1, \\ 0, & t > 1, \end{cases}$$

where k is a constant. In engineering contexts $f(t)$ often represents a unit pulse, perhaps of force or voltage.

Note that f is a piecewise continuous function. Then

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-st} f(t)\, dt = \int_0^1 e^{-st}\, dt = -\left.\frac{e^{-st}}{s}\right|_0^1 = \frac{1-e^{-s}}{s}, \qquad s > 0.$$

Observe that $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ does not depend on k, the function value at the point of discontinuity. Even if $f(t)$ is not defined at this point, the Laplace transform of f remains the same. Thus there are many functions, differing only in their value at a single point, that have the same Laplace transform.

EXAMPLE 7

Let $f(t) = \sin at,\ t \geq 0$. Then

$$\mathcal{L}\{\sin at\} = F(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-st} \sin at\, dt, \qquad s > 0.$$

Since

$$F(s) = \lim_{A\to\infty} \int_0^A e^{-st} \sin at\, dt,$$

upon integrating by parts, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} F(s) &= \lim_{A\to\infty} \left[-\frac{e^{-st}\cos at}{a}\bigg|_0^A - \frac{s}{a}\int_0^A e^{-st}\cos at\, dt \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{a} - \frac{s}{a}\int_0^\infty e^{-st}\cos at\, dt. \end{aligned}$$

A second integration by parts then yields

$$\begin{aligned} F(s) &= \frac{1}{a} - \frac{s^2}{a^2}\int_0^\infty e^{-st}\sin at\, dt \\ &= \frac{1}{a} - \frac{s^2}{a^2}F(s). \end{aligned}$$

Hence, solving for $F(s)$, we have

$$F(s) = \frac{a}{s^2+a^2}, \qquad s > 0.$$

Now let us suppose that f_1 and f_2 are two functions whose Laplace transforms exist for $s > a_1$ and $s > a_2$, respectively. Then, for s greater than the maximum of a_1 and a_2,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{c_1f_1(t) + c_2f_2(t)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-st}[c_1f_1(t) + c_2f_2(t)]\, dt \\ &= c_1\int_0^\infty e^{-st}f_1(t)\, dt + c_2\int_0^\infty e^{-st}f_2(t)\, dt; \end{aligned}$$

hence

$$\mathcal{L}\{c_1f_1(t) + c_2f_2(t)\} = c_1\mathcal{L}\{f_1(t)\} + c_2\mathcal{L}\{f_2(t)\}. \tag{6}$$

Equation (6) states that the Laplace transform is a **linear operator**, and we make frequent use of this property later. The sum in Eq. (6) can be readily extended to an arbitrary number of terms.

EXAMPLE 8

Find the Laplace transform of $f(t) = 5e^{-2t} - 3\sin 4t,\ t \geq 0$.

Using Eq. (6), we write

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = 5\mathcal{L}\{e^{-2t}\} - 3\mathcal{L}\{\sin 4t\}.$$

Then, from Examples 5 and 7, we obtain

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \frac{5}{s+2} - \frac{12}{s^2+16}, \qquad s > 0.$$

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 4, sketch the graph of the given function. In each case determine whether f is continuous, piecewise continuous, or neither on the interval $0 \le t \le 3$.

1. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t^2, & 0 \le t \le 1 \\ 2+t, & 1 < t \le 2 \\ 6-t, & 2 < t \le 3 \end{cases}$

2. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t^2, & 0 \le t \le 1 \\ (t-1)^{-1}, & 1 < t \le 2 \\ 1, & 2 < t \le 3 \end{cases}$

3. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t^2, & 0 \le t \le 1 \\ 1, & 1 < t \le 2 \\ 3-t, & 2 < t \le 3 \end{cases}$

4. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t \le 1 \\ 3-t, & 1 < t \le 2 \\ 1, & 2 < t \le 3 \end{cases}$

5. Find the Laplace transform of each of the following functions:
   (a) $f(t) = t$
   (b) $f(t) = t^2$
   (c) $f(t) = t^n$, where n is a positive integer

6. Find the Laplace transform of $f(t) = \cos at$, where a is a real constant.

Recall that $\cosh bt = (e^{bt} + e^{-bt})/2$ and $\sinh bt = (e^{bt} - e^{-bt})/2$. In each of Problems 7 through 10, find the Laplace transform of the given function; a and b are real constants.

7. $f(t) = \cosh bt$

8. $f(t) = \sinh bt$

9. $f(t) = e^{at} \cosh bt$

10. $f(t) = e^{at} \sinh bt$

Recall that $\cos bt = (e^{ibt} + e^{-ibt})/2$ and that $\sin bt = (e^{ibt} - e^{-ibt})/2i$. In each of Problems 11 through 14, find the Laplace transform of the given function; a and b are real constants. Assume that the necessary elementary integration formulas extend to this case.

11. $f(t) = \sin bt$

12. $f(t) = \cos bt$

13. $f(t) = e^{at} \sin bt$

14. $f(t) = e^{at} \cos bt$

In each of Problems 15 through 20, use integration by parts to find the Laplace transform of the given function; n is a positive integer and a is a real constant.

15. $f(t) = te^{at}$

16. $f(t) = t \sin at$

17. $f(t) = t \cosh at$

18. $f(t) = t^n e^{at}$

19. $f(t) = t^2 \sin at$

20. $f(t) = t^2 \sinh at$

In each of Problems 21 through 24, find the Laplace transform of the given function.

21. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < \pi \\ 0, & \pi \le t < \infty \end{cases}$

22. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 0, & 1 \le t < \infty \end{cases}$

23. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 1, & 1 \le t < \infty \end{cases}$

24. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 2-t, & 1 \le t < 2 \\ 0, & 2 \le t < \infty \end{cases}$

In each of Problems 25 through 28, determine whether the given integral converges or diverges.

25. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty (t^2+1)^{-1}\,dt$

26. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty te^{-t}\,dt$

27. $\displaystyle\int_1^\infty t^{-2}e^t\,dt$

28. $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty e^{-t}\cos t\,dt$

29. Suppose that f and f' are continuous for $t \geq 0$ and of exponential order as $t \to \infty$. Use integration by parts to show that if $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$, then $\lim_{s\to\infty} F(s) = 0$. The result is actually true under less restrictive conditions, such as those of Theorem 6.1.2.

30. **The Gamma Function.** The gamma function is denoted by $\Gamma(p)$ and is defined by the integral

$$\Gamma(p+1) = \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^p \, dx. \tag{i}$$

The integral converges as $x \to \infty$ for all p. For $p < 0$ it is also improper at $x = 0$, because the integrand becomes unbounded as $x \to 0$. However, the integral can be shown to converge at $x = 0$ for $p > -1$.

(a) Show that, for $p > 0$,

$$\Gamma(p+1) = p\Gamma(p).$$

(b) Show that $\Gamma(1) = 1$.

(c) If p is a positive integer n, show that

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n!.$$

Since $\Gamma(p)$ is also defined when p is not an integer, this function provides an extension of the factorial function to nonintegral values of the independent variable. Note that it is also consistent to define $0! = 1$.

(d) Show that, for $p > 0$,

$$p(p+1)(p+2)\cdots(p+n-1) = \Gamma(p+n)/\Gamma(p).$$

Thus $\Gamma(p)$ can be determined for all positive values of p if $\Gamma(p)$ is known in a single interval of unit length—say, $0 < p \leq 1$. It is possible to show that $\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi}$. Find $\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$ and $\Gamma\left(\frac{11}{2}\right)$.

31. Consider the Laplace transform of t^p, where $p > -1$.

(a) Referring to Problem 30, show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^p\} = \int_0^\infty e^{-st} t^p \, dt = \frac{1}{s^{p+1}} \int_0^\infty e^{-x} x^p \, dx$$
$$= \Gamma(p+1)/s^{p+1}, \qquad s > 0.$$

(b) Let p be a positive integer n in part (a); show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^n\} = n!/s^{n+1}, \qquad s > 0.$$

(c) Show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^{-1/2}\} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{s}} \int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} \, dx, \qquad s > 0.$$

It is possible to show that

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-x^2} \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2};$$

hence

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^{-1/2}\} = \sqrt{\pi/s}, \qquad s > 0.$$

(d) Show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{t^{1/2}\} = \sqrt{\pi}/(2s^{3/2}), \qquad s > 0.$$

6.2 Solution of Initial Value Problems

In this section we show how the Laplace transform can be used to solve initial value problems for linear differential equations with constant coefficients. The usefulness of the Laplace transform for this purpose rests primarily on the fact that the transform of f' is related in a simple way to the transform of f. The relationship is expressed in the following theorem.

Theorem 6.2.1 Suppose that f is continuous and f' is piecewise continuous on any interval $0 \le t \le A$. Suppose further that there exist constants K, a, and M such that $|f(t)| \le Ke^{at}$ for $t \ge M$. Then $\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\}$ exists for $s > a$, and moreover,

$$\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\} = s\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - f(0). \tag{1}$$

To prove this theorem, we consider the integral

$$\int_0^A e^{-st} f'(t)\, dt,$$

whose limit as $A \to \infty$, if it exists, is the Laplace transform of f'. To calculate this limit we first need to write the integral in a suitable form. If f' has points of discontinuity in the interval $0 \le t \le A$, let them be denoted by $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_k$. Then we can write the integral as

$$\int_0^A e^{-st} f'(t)\, dt = \int_0^{t_1} e^{-st} f'(t)\, dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} e^{-st} f'(t)\, dt + \cdots + \int_{t_k}^{A} e^{-st} f'(t)\, dt.$$

Integrating each term on the right by parts yields

$$\int_0^A e^{-st} f'(t)\, dt = e^{-st} f(t)\Big|_0^{t_1} + e^{-st} f(t)\Big|_{t_1}^{t_2} + \cdots + e^{-st} f(t)\Big|_{t_k}^{A}$$
$$+ s\left[\int_0^{t_1} e^{-st} f(t)\, dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} e^{-st} f(t)\, dt + \cdots + \int_{t_k}^{A} e^{-st} f(t)\, dt\right].$$

Since f is continuous, the contributions of the integrated terms at $t_1, t_2, \ldots, t_k$ cancel. Further, the integrals on the right side can be combined into a single integral, so that we obtain

$$\int_0^A e^{-st} f'(t)\, dt = e^{-sA} f(A) - f(0) + s\int_0^A e^{-st} f(t)\, dt. \tag{2}$$

Now we let $A \to \infty$ in Eq. (2). The integral on the right side of this equation approaches $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$. Further, for $A \ge M$, we have $|f(A)| \le Ke^{aA}$; consequently, $|e^{-sA} f(A)| \le Ke^{-(s-a)A}$. Hence $e^{-sA} f(A) \to 0$ as $A \to \infty$ whenever $s > a$. Thus the right side of Eq. (2) has the limit $s\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - f(0)$. Consequently, the left side of Eq. (2) also has a limit, and as noted above, this limit is $\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\}$. Therefore, for $s > a$, we conclude that

$$\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\} = s\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - f(0),$$

which establishes the theorem.

If f' and f'' satisfy the same conditions that are imposed on f and f', respectively, in Theorem 6.2.1, then it follows that the Laplace transform of f'' also exists for $s > a$ and is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}\{f''(t)\} &= s\mathcal{L}\{f'(t)\} - f'(0) \\ &= s[s\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - f(0)] - f'(0) \\ &= s^2\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - sf(0) - f'(0).\end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

Indeed, provided the function f and its derivatives satisfy suitable conditions, an expression for the transform of the nth derivative $f^{(n)}$ can be derived by n successive applications of this theorem. The result is given in the following corollary.

Corollary 6.2.2 Suppose that the functions $f, f', \ldots, f^{(n-1)}$ are continuous and that $f^{(n)}$ is piecewise continuous on any interval $0 \le t \le A$. Suppose further that there exist constants K, a, and M such that $|f(t)| \le Ke^{at}$, $|f'(t)| \le Ke^{at}, \ldots, |f^{(n-1)}(t)| \le Ke^{at}$ for $t \ge M$. Then $\mathcal{L}\{f^{(n)}(t)\}$ exists for $s > a$ and is given by

$$\mathcal{L}\{f^{(n)}(t)\} = s^n\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} - s^{n-1}f(0) - \cdots - sf^{(n-2)}(0) - f^{(n-1)}(0). \tag{4}$$

We now show how the Laplace transform can be used to solve initial value problems. It is most useful for problems involving nonhomogeneous differential equations, as we will demonstrate in later sections of this chapter. However, we begin by looking at some homogeneous equations, which are a bit simpler.

EXAMPLE 1

Consider the differential equation

$$y'' - y' - 2y = 0 \tag{5}$$

and the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 1, \qquad y'(0) = 0. \tag{6}$$

This problem is easily solved by the methods of Section 3.1. The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 - r - 2 = (r-2)(r+1) = 0,$$

and consequently, the general solution of Eq. (5) is

$$y = c_1e^{-t} + c_2e^{2t}. \tag{7}$$

To satisfy the initial conditions (6), we must have $c_1 + c_2 = 1$ and $-c_1 + 2c_2 = 0$; hence $c_1 = \frac{2}{3}$ and $c_2 = \frac{1}{3}$, so the solution of the initial value problem (5) and (6) is

$$y = \phi(t) = \tfrac{2}{3}e^{-t} + \tfrac{1}{3}e^{2t}. \tag{8}$$

Now let us solve the same problem by using the Laplace transform. To do this, we must assume that the problem has a solution $y = \phi(t)$, which with its first two derivatives satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2. Then, taking the Laplace transform of the differential equation (5), we obtain

$$\mathcal{L}\{y''\} - \mathcal{L}\{y'\} - 2\mathcal{L}\{y\} = 0, \tag{9}$$

where we have used the linearity of the transform to write the transform of a sum as the sum of the separate transforms. Upon using the corollary to express $\mathcal{L}\{y''\}$ and $\mathcal{L}\{y'\}$ in terms of $\mathcal{L}\{y\}$, we find that Eq. (9) becomes

$$s^2\mathcal{L}\{y\} - sy(0) - y'(0) - [s\mathcal{L}\{y\} - y(0)] - 2\mathcal{L}\{y\} = 0,$$

or

$$(s^2 - s - 2)Y(s) + (1 - s)y(0) - y'(0) = 0, \tag{10}$$

where $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}\{y\}$. Substituting for $y(0)$ and $y'(0)$ in Eq. (10) from the initial conditions (6), and then solving for $Y(s)$, we obtain

$$Y(s) = \frac{s-1}{s^2 - s - 2} = \frac{s-1}{(s-2)(s+1)}. \tag{11}$$

We have thus obtained an expression for the Laplace transform $Y(s)$ of the solution $y = \phi(t)$ of the given initial value problem. To determine the function ϕ, we must find the function whose Laplace transform is $Y(s)$, as given by Eq. (11).

This can be done most easily by expanding the right side of Eq. (11) in partial fractions. Thus we write

$$Y(s) = \frac{s-1}{(s-2)(s+1)} = \frac{a}{s-2} + \frac{b}{s+1} = \frac{a(s+1) + b(s-2)}{(s-2)(s+1)}, \tag{12}$$

where the coefficients a and b are to be determined. By equating numerators of the second and fourth members of Eq. (12), we obtain

$$s - 1 = a(s+1) + b(s-2),$$

an equation that must hold for all s. In particular, if we set $s = 2$, then it follows that $a = \frac{1}{3}$. Similarly, if we set $s = -1$, then we find that $b = \frac{2}{3}$. By substituting these values for a and b, respectively, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{1/3}{s-2} + \frac{2/3}{s+1}. \tag{13}$$

Finally, if we use the result of Example 5 of Section 6.1, it follows that $\frac{1}{3}e^{2t}$ has the transform $\frac{1}{3}(s-2)^{-1}$; similarly, $\frac{2}{3}e^{-t}$ has the transform $\frac{2}{3}(s+1)^{-1}$. Hence, by the linearity of the Laplace transform,

$$y = \phi(t) = \tfrac{1}{3}e^{2t} + \tfrac{2}{3}e^{-t}$$

has the transform (13) and is therefore the solution of the initial value problem (5), (6). Observe that it does satisfy the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2, as we assumed initially. Of course, this is the same solution that we obtained earlier.

The same procedure can be applied to the general second order linear equation with constant coefficients

$$ay'' + by' + cy = f(t). \tag{14}$$

Assuming that the solution $y = \phi(t)$ satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2 for $n = 2$, we can take the transform of Eq. (14) and thereby obtain

$$a[s^2Y(s) - sy(0) - y'(0)] + b[sY(s) - y(0)] + cY(s) = F(s), \tag{15}$$

where $F(s)$ is the transform of $f(t)$. By solving Eq. (15) for $Y(s)$, we find that

$$Y(s) = \frac{(as+b)y(0) + ay'(0)}{as^2 + bs + c} + \frac{F(s)}{as^2 + bs + c}. \tag{16}$$

The problem is then solved, provided that we can find the function $y = \phi(t)$ whose transform is $Y(s)$.

Even at this early stage of our discussion we can point out some of the essential features of the transform method. In the first place, the transform $Y(s)$ of the unknown function $y = \phi(t)$ is found by solving an *algebraic equation* rather than a *differential equation*, Eq. (10) rather than Eq. (5) in Example 1, or in general Eq. (15) rather than Eq. (14). This is the key to the usefulness of Laplace transforms for solving linear, constant coefficient, ordinary differential equations—the problem is reduced from a differential equation to an algebraic one. Next, the solution satisfying given initial conditions is automatically found, so that the task of determining appropriate values for the arbitrary constants in the general solution does not arise. Further, as indicated in Eq. (15), nonhomogeneous equations are handled in exactly the same way as homogeneous ones; it is not necessary to solve the corresponding homogeneous equation first. Finally, the method can be applied in the same way to higher order equations, as long as we assume that the solution satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2 for the appropriate value of n.

Observe that the polynomial $as^2 + bs + c$ in the denominator on the right side of Eq. (16) is precisely the characteristic polynomial associated with Eq. (14). Since the use of a partial fraction expansion of $Y(s)$ to determine $\phi(t)$ requires us to factor this polynomial, the use of Laplace transforms does not avoid the necessity of finding roots of the characteristic equation. For equations of higher than second order, this may require a numerical approximation, particularly if the roots are irrational or complex.

The main difficulty that occurs in solving initial value problems by the transform method lies in the problem of determining the function $y = \phi(t)$ corresponding to the transform $Y(s)$. This problem is known as the inversion problem for the Laplace transform; $\phi(t)$ is called the inverse transform corresponding to $Y(s)$, and the process of finding $\phi(t)$ from $Y(s)$ is known as inverting the transform. We also use the notation $\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{Y(s)\}$ to denote the inverse transform of $Y(s)$. There is a general formula for the inverse Laplace transform, but its use requires a familiarity with functions of a complex variable, and we do not consider it in this book. However, it is still possible to develop many important properties of the Laplace transform, and to solve many interesting problems, without the use of complex variables.

In solving the initial value problem (5), (6), we did not consider the question of whether there may be functions other than the one given by Eq. (8) that also have the transform (13). By Theorem 3.2.1 we know that the initial value problem has no other solutions. We also know that the unique solution (8) of the initial value problem is continuous. Consistent with this fact, it can be shown that if f and g are continuous functions with the same Laplace transform, then f and g must be identical. On the other hand, if f and g are only piecewise continuous, then they may differ at one or more points of discontinuity and yet have the same Laplace transform; see Example 6 in Section 6.1. This lack of uniqueness of the inverse Laplace transform for piecewise continuous functions is of no practical significance in applications.

Thus there is essentially a one-to-one correspondence between functions and their Laplace transforms. This fact suggests the compilation of a table, such as Table 6.2.1, giving the transforms of functions frequently encountered, and vice versa. The entries in the second column of Table 6.2.1 are the transforms of those in the first column. Perhaps more important, the functions in the first column are the inverse transforms

TABLE 6.2.1 Elementary Laplace Transforms

$f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$	$F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$	Notes
1. 1	$\dfrac{1}{s}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 4
2. e^{at}	$\dfrac{1}{s-a}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 5
3. $t^n, \quad n =$ positive integer	$\dfrac{n!}{s^{n+1}}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 31
4. $t^p, \quad p > -1$	$\dfrac{\Gamma(p+1)}{s^{p+1}}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 31
5. $\sin at$	$\dfrac{a}{s^2+a^2}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 7
6. $\cos at$	$\dfrac{s}{s^2+a^2}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 6
7. $\sinh at$	$\dfrac{a}{s^2-a^2}, \quad s > \lvert a \rvert$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 8
8. $\cosh at$	$\dfrac{s}{s^2-a^2}, \quad s > \lvert a \rvert$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 7
9. $e^{at}\sin bt$	$\dfrac{b}{(s-a)^2+b^2}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 13
10. $e^{at}\cos bt$	$\dfrac{s-a}{(s-a)^2+b^2}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 14
11. $t^n e^{at}, \quad n =$ positive integer	$\dfrac{n!}{(s-a)^{n+1}}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 18
12. $u_c(t)$	$\dfrac{e^{-cs}}{s}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.3
13. $u_c(t)f(t-c)$	$e^{-cs}F(s)$	Sec. 6.3
14. $e^{ct}f(t)$	$F(s-c)$	Sec. 6.3
15. $f(ct)$	$\dfrac{1}{c}F\left(\dfrac{s}{c}\right), \quad c > 0$	Sec. 6.3; Prob. 25
16. $\displaystyle\int_0^t f(t-\tau)g(\tau)\,d\tau$	$F(s)G(s)$	Sec. 6.6
17. $\delta(t-c)$	e^{-cs}	Sec. 6.5
18. $f^{(n)}(t)$	$s^nF(s) - s^{n-1}f(0) - \cdots - f^{(n-1)}(0)$	Sec. 6.2; Cor. 6.2.2
19. $(-t)^n f(t)$	$F^{(n)}(s)$	Sec. 6.2; Prob. 29

of those in the second column. Thus, for example, if the transform of the solution of a differential equation is known, the solution itself can often be found merely by looking it up in the table. Some of the entries in Table 6.2.1 have been used as examples, or appear as problems in Section 6.1, while others will be developed later in the chapter. The third column of the table indicates where the derivation of the given transforms may be found. Although Table 6.2.1 is sufficient for the examples and problems in this book, much larger tables are also available (see the list of references at the end of the chapter). Transforms and inverse transforms can also be readily obtained electronically by using a computer algebra system.

Frequently, a Laplace transform $F(s)$ is expressible as a sum of several terms

$$F(s) = F_1(s) + F_2(s) + \cdots + F_n(s). \tag{17}$$

Suppose that $f_1(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F_1(s)\}, \ldots, f_n(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F_n(s)\}$. Then the function

$$f(t) = f_1(t) + \cdots + f_n(t)$$

has the Laplace transform $F(s)$. By the uniqueness property stated previously, no other continuous function f has the same transform. Thus

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F_1(s)\} + \cdots + \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F_n(s)\}; \tag{18}$$

that is, the inverse Laplace transform is also a linear operator.

In many problems it is convenient to make use of this property by decomposing a given transform into a sum of functions whose inverse transforms are already known or can be found in the table. Partial fraction expansions are particularly useful for this purpose, and a general result covering many cases is given in Problem 39. Other useful properties of Laplace transforms are derived later in this chapter.

As further illustrations of the technique of solving initial value problems by means of the Laplace transform and partial fraction expansions, consider the following examples.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the solution of the differential equation

$$y'' + y = \sin 2t \tag{19}$$

satisfying the initial conditions

$$y(0) = 2, \qquad y'(0) = 1. \tag{20}$$

We assume that this initial value problem has a solution $y = \phi(t)$, which with its first two derivatives satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2. Then, taking the Laplace transform of the differential equation, we have

$$s^2 Y(s) - sy(0) - y'(0) + Y(s) = 2/(s^2 + 4),$$

where the transform of $\sin 2t$ has been obtained from line 5 of Table 6.2.1. Substituting for $y(0)$ and $y'(0)$ from the initial conditions and solving for $Y(s)$, we obtain

$$Y(s) = \frac{2s^3 + s^2 + 8s + 6}{(s^2 + 1)(s^2 + 4)}. \tag{21}$$

Using partial fractions, we can write $Y(s)$ in the form

$$Y(s) = \frac{as + b}{s^2 + 1} + \frac{cs + d}{s^2 + 4} = \frac{(as + b)(s^2 + 4) + (cs + d)(s^2 + 1)}{(s^2 + 1)(s^2 + 4)}. \tag{22}$$

By expanding the numerator on the right side of Eq. (22) and equating it to the numerator in Eq. (21), we find that

$$2s^3 + s^2 + 8s + 6 = (a+c)s^3 + (b+d)s^2 + (4a+c)s + (4b+d)$$

for all s. Then, comparing coefficients of like powers of s, we have

$$a + c = 2, \qquad b + d = 1,$$
$$4a + c = 8, \qquad 4b + d = 6.$$

Consequently, $a = 2$, $c = 0$, $b = \frac{5}{3}$, and $d = -\frac{2}{3}$, from which it follows that

$$Y(s) = \frac{2s}{s^2+1} + \frac{5/3}{s^2+1} - \frac{2/3}{s^2+4}. \tag{23}$$

From lines 5 and 6 of Table 6.2.1, the solution of the given initial value problem is

$$y = \phi(t) = 2\cos t + \tfrac{5}{3}\sin t - \tfrac{1}{3}\sin 2t. \tag{24}$$

EXAMPLE 3

Find the solution of the initial value problem

$$y^{(4)} - y = 0, \tag{25}$$

$$y(0) = 0, \qquad y'(0) = 1, \qquad y''(0) = 0, \qquad y'''(0) = 0. \tag{26}$$

In this problem we need to assume that the solution $y = \phi(t)$ satisfies the conditions of Corollary 6.2.2 for $n = 4$. The Laplace transform of the differential equation (25) is

$$s^4 Y(s) - s^3 y(0) - s^2 y'(0) - sy''(0) - y'''(0) - Y(s) = 0.$$

Then, using the initial conditions (26) and solving for $Y(s)$, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{s^2}{s^4 - 1}. \tag{27}$$

A partial fraction expansion of $Y(s)$ is

$$Y(s) = \frac{as+b}{s^2-1} + \frac{cs+d}{s^2+1},$$

and it follows that

$$(as+b)(s^2+1) + (cs+d)(s^2-1) = s^2 \tag{28}$$

for all s. By setting $s = 1$ and $s = -1$, respectively, in Eq. (28), we obtain the pair of equations

$$2(a+b) = 1, \qquad 2(-a+b) = 1,$$

and therefore $a = 0$ and $b = \frac{1}{2}$. If we set $s = 0$ in Eq. (28), then $b - d = 0$, so $d = \frac{1}{2}$. Finally, equating the coefficients of the cubic terms on each side of Eq. (28), we find that $a + c = 0$, so $c = 0$. Thus

$$Y(s) = \frac{1/2}{s^2-1} + \frac{1/2}{s^2+1}, \tag{29}$$

and from lines 7 and 5 of Table 6.2.1, the solution of the initial value problem (25), (26) is

$$y = \phi(t) = \frac{\sinh t + \sin t}{2}. \tag{30}$$

The most important elementary applications of the Laplace transform are in the study of mechanical vibrations and in the analysis of electric circuits; the governing equations were derived in Section 3.7. A vibrating spring–mass system has the equation of motion

$$m\frac{d^2u}{dt^2} + \gamma\frac{du}{dt} + ku = F(t), \tag{31}$$

where m is the mass, γ the damping coefficient, k the spring constant, and $F(t)$ the applied external force. The equation that describes an electric circuit containing an inductance L, a resistance R, and a capacitance C (an LRC circuit) is

$$L\frac{d^2Q}{dt^2} + R\frac{dQ}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}Q = E(t), \tag{32}$$

where $Q(t)$ is the charge on the capacitor and $E(t)$ is the applied voltage. In terms of the current $I(t) = dQ(t)/dt$, we can differentiate Eq. (32) and write

$$L\frac{d^2I}{dt^2} + R\frac{dI}{dt} + \frac{1}{C}I = \frac{dE}{dt}(t). \tag{33}$$

Suitable initial conditions on u, Q, or I must also be prescribed.

We have noted previously, in Section 3.7, that Eq. (31) for the spring–mass system and Eqs. (32) or (33) for the electric circuit are identical mathematically, differing only in the interpretation of the constants and variables appearing in them. There are other physical problems that also lead to the same differential equation. Thus, once the mathematical problem is solved, its solution can be interpreted in terms of whichever corresponding physical problem is of immediate interest.

In the problem lists following this and other sections in this chapter are numerous initial value problems for second order linear differential equations with constant coefficients. Many can be interpreted as models of particular physical systems, but usually we do not point this out explicitly.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 10, find the inverse Laplace transform of the given function.

1. $F(s) = \dfrac{3}{s^2+4}$
2. $F(s) = \dfrac{4}{(s-1)^3}$
3. $F(s) = \dfrac{2}{s^2+3s-4}$
4. $F(s) = \dfrac{3s}{s^2-s-6}$
5. $F(s) = \dfrac{2s+2}{s^2+2s+5}$
6. $F(s) = \dfrac{2s-3}{s^2-4}$
7. $F(s) = \dfrac{2s+1}{s^2-2s+2}$
8. $F(s) = \dfrac{8s^2-4s+12}{s(s^2+4)}$
9. $F(s) = \dfrac{1-2s}{s^2+4s+5}$
10. $F(s) = \dfrac{2s-3}{s^2+2s+10}$

In each of Problems 11 through 23, use the Laplace transform to solve the given initial value problem.

11. $y'' - y' - 6y = 0; \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = -1$
12. $y'' + 3y' + 2y = 0; \quad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$

13. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = 0; \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$
14. $y'' - 4y' + 4y = 0; \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 1$
15. $y'' - 2y' + 4y = 0; \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = 0$
16. $y'' + 2y' + 5y = 0; \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$
17. $y^{(4)} - 4y''' + 6y'' - 4y' + y = 0; \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1, \quad y''(0) = 0, \quad y'''(0) = 1$
18. $y^{(4)} - y = 0; \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = 1, \quad y'''(0) = 0$
19. $y^{(4)} - 4y = 0; \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0, \quad y''(0) = -2, \quad y'''(0) = 0$
20. $y'' + \omega^2 y = \cos 2t, \quad \omega^2 \neq 4; \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$
21. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = \cos t; \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$
22. $y'' - 2y' + 2y = e^{-t}; \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$
23. $y'' + 2y' + y = 4e^{-t}; \qquad y(0) = 2, \quad y'(0) = -1$

In each of Problems 24 through 27, find the Laplace transform $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}\{y\}$ of the solution of the given initial value problem. A method of determining the inverse transform is developed in Section 6.3. You may wish to refer to Problems 21 through 24 in Section 6.1.

24. $y'' + 4y = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < \pi, \\ 0, & \pi \le t < \infty; \end{cases} \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$

25. $y'' + y = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ 0, & 1 \le t < \infty; \end{cases} \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$

26. $y'' + 4y = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ 1, & 1 \le t < \infty; \end{cases} \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$

27. $y'' + y = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ 2 - t, & 1 \le t < 2, \\ 0, & 2 \le t < \infty; \end{cases} \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 0$

28. The Laplace transforms of certain functions can be found conveniently from their Taylor series expansions.
    (a) Using the Taylor series for $\sin t$
$$\sin t = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n t^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!},$$
    and assuming that the Laplace transform of this series can be computed term by term, verify that
$$\mathcal{L}\{\sin t\} = \frac{1}{s^2+1}, \qquad s > 1.$$
    (b) Let
$$f(t) = \begin{cases} (\sin t)/t, & t \neq 0, \\ 1, & t = 0. \end{cases}$$
    Find the Taylor series for f about $t = 0$. Assuming that the Laplace transform of this function can be computed term by term, verify that
$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \arctan(1/s), \qquad s > 1.$$

(c) The Bessel function of the first kind of order zero, J_0, has the Taylor series (see Section 5.7)

$$J_0(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n t^{2n}}{2^{2n}(n!)^2}.$$

Assuming that the following Laplace transforms can be computed term by term, verify that

$$\mathcal{L}\{J_0(t)\} = (s^2+1)^{-1/2}, \qquad s > 1$$

and

$$\mathcal{L}\{J_0(\sqrt{t})\} = s^{-1}e^{-1/(4s)}, \qquad s > 0.$$

Problems 29 through 37 are concerned with differentiation of the Laplace transform.

29. Let

$$F(s) = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-st} f(t)\, dt.$$

It is possible to show that as long as f satisfies the conditions of Theorem 6.1.2, it is legitimate to differentiate under the integral sign with respect to the parameter s when $s > a$.

(a) Show that $F'(s) = \mathcal{L}\{-tf(t)\}$.

(b) Show that $F^{(n)}(s) = \mathcal{L}\{(-t)^n f(t)\}$; hence differentiating the Laplace transform corresponds to multiplying the original function by $-t$.

In each of Problems 30 through 35, use the result of Problem 29 to find the Laplace transform of the given function; a and b are real numbers and n is a positive integer.

30. $f(t) = te^{at}$

31. $f(t) = t^2 \sin bt$

32. $f(t) = t^n$

33. $f(t) = t^n e^{at}$

34. $f(t) = te^{at} \sin bt$

35. $f(t) = te^{at} \cos bt$

36. Consider Bessel's equation of order zero

$$ty'' + y' + ty = 0.$$

Recall from Section 5.7 that $t = 0$ is a regular singular point for this equation, and therefore solutions may become unbounded as $t \to 0$. However, let us try to determine whether there are any solutions that remain finite at $t = 0$ and have finite derivatives there. Assuming that there is such a solution $y = \phi(t)$, let $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}\{\phi(t)\}$.

(a) Show that $Y(s)$ satisfies

$$(1+s^2)Y'(s) + sY(s) = 0.$$

(b) Show that $Y(s) = c(1+s^2)^{-1/2}$, where c is an arbitrary constant.

(c) Writing $(1+s^2)^{-1/2} = s^{-1}(1+s^{-2})^{-1/2}$, expanding in a binomial series valid for $s > 1$, and assuming that it is permissible to take the inverse transform term by term, show that

$$y = c\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n t^{2n}}{2^{2n}(n!)^2} = cJ_0(t),$$

where J_0 is the Bessel function of the first kind of order zero. Note that $J_0(0) = 1$ and that J_0 has finite derivatives of all orders at $t = 0$. It was shown in Section 5.7 that the second solution of this equation becomes unbounded as $t \to 0$.

37. For each of the following initial value problems, use the results of Problem 29 to find the differential equation satisfied by $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}\{\phi(t)\}$, where $y = \phi(t)$ is the solution of the given initial value problem.

(a) $y'' - ty = 0; \qquad y(0) = 1, \quad y'(0) = 0$ (Airy's equation)

(b) $(1 - t^2)y'' - 2ty' + \alpha(\alpha + 1)y = 0; \qquad y(0) = 0, \quad y'(0) = 1$ (Legendre's equation)

Note that the differential equation for $Y(s)$ is of first order in part (a), but of second order in part (b). This is due to the fact that t appears at most to the first power in the equation of part (a), whereas it appears to the second power in that of part (b). This illustrates that the Laplace transform is not often useful in solving differential equations with variable coefficients, unless all the coefficients are at most linear functions of the independent variable.

38. Suppose that

$$g(t) = \int_0^t f(\tau)\, d\tau.$$

If $G(s)$ and $F(s)$ are the Laplace transforms of $g(t)$ and $f(t)$, respectively, show that

$$G(s) = F(s)/s.$$

39. In this problem we show how a general partial fraction expansion can be used to calculate many inverse Laplace transforms. Suppose that

$$F(s) = P(s)/Q(s),$$

where $Q(s)$ is a polynomial of degree n with distinct zeros $r_1, \ldots, r_n$, and $P(s)$ is a polynomial of degree less than n. In this case it is possible to show that $P(s)/Q(s)$ has a partial fraction expansion of the form

$$\frac{P(s)}{Q(s)} = \frac{A_1}{s - r_1} + \cdots + \frac{A_n}{s - r_n}, \tag{i}$$

where the coefficients $A_1, \ldots, A_n$ must be determined.

(a) Show that

$$A_k = P(r_k)/Q'(r_k), \qquad k = 1, \ldots, n. \tag{ii}$$

Hint: One way to do this is to multiply Eq. (i) by $s - r_k$ and then to take the limit as $s \to r_k$.

(b) Show that

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{P(r_k)}{Q'(r_k)} e^{r_k t}. \tag{iii}$$

6.3 Step Functions

In Section 6.2 we outlined the general procedure involved in solving initial value problems by means of the Laplace transform. Some of the most interesting elementary applications of the transform method occur in the solution of linear differential equations with discontinuous or impulsive forcing functions. Equations of this type frequently arise in the analysis of the flow of current in electric circuits or the vibrations of mechanical systems. In this section and the following ones, we develop some additional properties of the Laplace transform that are useful in the solution of such problems. Unless a specific statement is made to the contrary, all functions appearing below will be assumed to be piecewise continuous and of exponential order, so that their Laplace transforms exist, at least for s sufficiently large.

To deal effectively with functions having jump discontinuities, it is very helpful to introduce a function known as the **unit step function** or **Heaviside function**. This function will be denoted by u_c and is defined by

$$u_c(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < c, \\ 1, & t \geq c. \end{cases} \tag{1}$$

Since the Laplace transform involves values of t in the interval $[0, \infty)$, we are also interested only in nonnegative values of c. The graph of $y = u_c(t)$ is shown in Figure 6.3.1. We have somewhat arbitrarily assigned the value one to u_c at $t = c$. However, for a piecewise continuous function such as u_c, the value at a discontinuity point is usually irrelevant. The step can also be negative. For instance, Figure 6.3.2 shows the graph of $y = 1 - u_c(t)$.

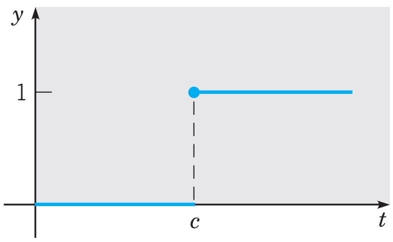


FIGURE 6.3.1 Graph of $y = u_c(t)$.

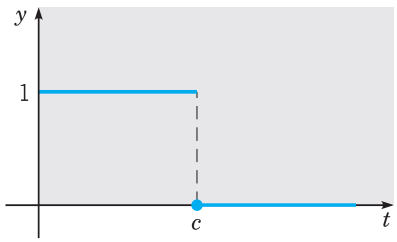


FIGURE 6.3.2 Graph of $y=1-u_c(t)$.

EXAMPLE 1

Sketch the graph of $y = h(t)$, where

$$h(t) = u_\pi(t) - u_{2\pi}(t), \qquad t \geq 0.$$

From the definition of $u_c(t)$ in Eq. (1), we have

$$h(t) = \begin{cases} 0 - 0 = 0, & 0 \leq t < \pi, \\ 1 - 0 = 1, & \pi \leq t < 2\pi, \\ 1 - 1 = 0, & 2\pi \leq t < \infty. \end{cases}$$

Thus the equation $y = h(t)$ has the graph shown in Figure 6.3.3. This function can be thought of as a rectangular pulse.

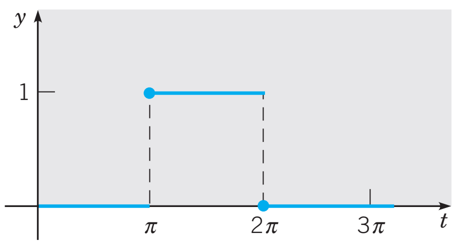


FIGURE 6.3.3 Graph of $y = u_\pi(t) - u_{2\pi}(t)$.

EXAMPLE 2

Consider the function

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} 2, & 0 \le t < 4, \\ 5, & 4 \le t < 7, \\ -1, & 7 \le t < 9, \\ 1, & t \ge 9, \end{cases} \tag{2}$$

whose graph is shown in Figure 6.3.4. Express $f(t)$ in terms of $u_c(t)$.

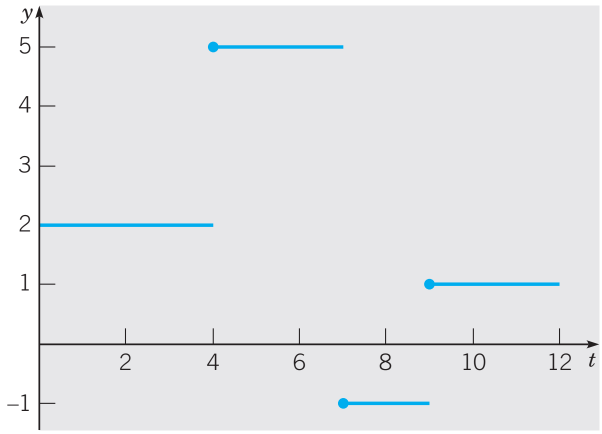


FIGURE 6.3.4 Graph of the function in Eq. (2).

We start with the function $f_1(t) = 2$, which agrees with $f(t)$ on $[0, 4)$. To produce the jump of three units at $t = 4$, we add $3u_4(t)$ to $f_1(t)$, obtaining

$$f_2(t) = 2 + 3u_4(t),$$

which agrees with $f(t)$ on $[0, 7)$. The negative jump of six units at $t = 7$ corresponds to adding $-6u_7(t)$, which gives

$$f_3(t) = 2 + 3u_4(t) - 6u_7(t).$$

Finally, we must add $2u_9(t)$ to match the jump of two units at $t = 9$. Thus we obtain

$$f(t) = 2 + 3u_4(t) - 6u_7(t) + 2u_9(t). \tag{3}$$

The Laplace transform of u_c for $c \ge 0$ is easily determined:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-st} u_c(t)\, dt = \int_c^\infty e^{-st}\, dt \\ &= \frac{e^{-cs}}{s}, \qquad s > 0. \end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

For a given function f defined for $t \ge 0$, we will often want to consider the related function g defined by

$$y = g(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < c, \\ f(t - c), & t \ge c, \end{cases}$$

which represents a translation of f a distance c in the positive t direction; see Figure 6.3.5. In terms of the unit step function we can write $g(t)$ in the convenient form

$$g(t) = u_c(t)f(t-c).$$

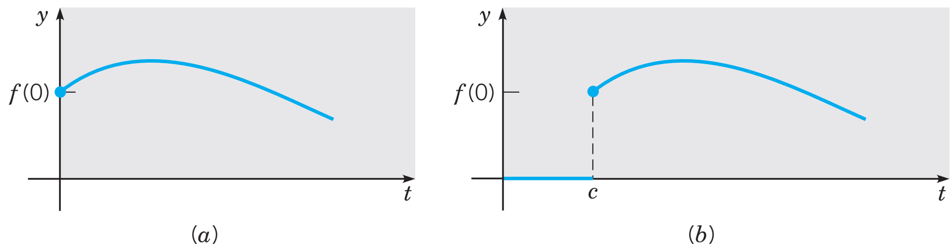


FIGURE 6.3.5 A translation of the given function. (a) $y = f(t)$; (b) $y = u_c(t)f(t-c)$.

The unit step function is particularly important in transform use because of the following relation between the transform of $f(t)$ and that of its translation $u_c(t)f(t-c)$.

Theorem 6.3.1 If $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ exists for $s > a \geq 0$, and if c is a positive constant, then

$$\mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)f(t-c)\} = e^{-cs}\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = e^{-cs}F(s), \qquad s > a. \tag{5}$$

Conversely, if $f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$, then

$$u_c(t)f(t-c) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{e^{-cs}F(s)\}. \tag{6}$$

Theorem 6.3.1 simply states that the translation of $f(t)$ a distance c in the positive t direction corresponds to the multiplication of $F(s)$ by e^{-cs}. To prove Theorem 6.3.1, it is sufficient to compute the transform of $u_c(t)f(t-c)$:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)f(t-c)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-st}u_c(t)f(t-c)\,dt \\ &= \int_c^\infty e^{-st}f(t-c)\,dt.\end{aligned}$$

Introducing a new integration variable $\xi = t - c$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)f(t-c)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-(\xi+c)s}f(\xi)\,d\xi = e^{-cs}\int_0^\infty e^{-s\xi}f(\xi)\,d\xi \\ &= e^{-cs}F(s).\end{aligned}$$

Thus Eq. (5) is established; Eq. (6) follows by taking the inverse transform of both sides of Eq. (5).

A simple example of this theorem occurs if we take $f(t) = 1$. Recalling that $\mathcal{L}\{1\} = 1/s$, we immediately have from Eq. (5) that $\mathcal{L}\{u_c(t)\} = e^{-cs}/s$. This result agrees with that of Eq. (4). Examples 3 and 4 illustrate further how Theorem 6.3.1 can be used in the calculation of transforms and inverse transforms.

EXAMPLE 3

If the function f is defined by

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} \sin t, & 0 \le t < \pi/4, \\ \sin t + \cos(t - \pi/4), & t \ge \pi/4, \end{cases}$$

find $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$. The graph of $y = f(t)$ is shown in Figure 6.3.6.

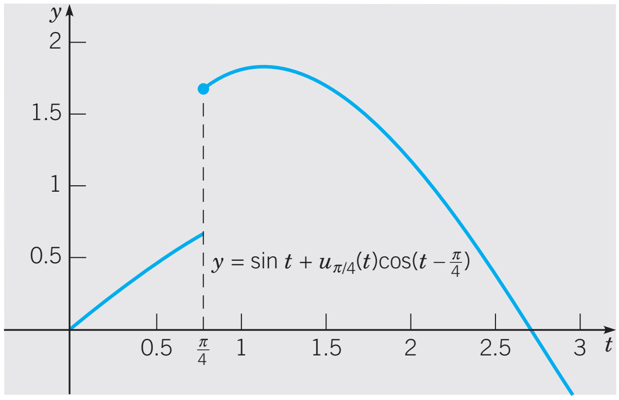


FIGURE 6.3.6 Graph of the function in Example 3.

Note that $f(t) = \sin t + g(t)$, where

$$g(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < \pi/4, \\ \cos(t - \pi/4), & t \ge \pi/4. \end{cases}$$

Thus

$$g(t) = u_{\pi/4}(t)\cos(t - \pi/4)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} &= \mathcal{L}\{\sin t\} + \mathcal{L}\{u_{\pi/4}(t)\cos(t - \pi/4)\} \\ &= \mathcal{L}\{\sin t\} + e^{-\pi s/4}\mathcal{L}\{\cos t\}. \end{aligned}$$

Introducing the transforms of $\sin t$ and $\cos t$, we obtain

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \frac{1}{s^2+1} + e^{-\pi s/4}\frac{s}{s^2+1} = \frac{1 + se^{-\pi s/4}}{s^2+1}.$$

You should compare this method with the calculation of $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ directly from the definition.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the inverse transform of

$$F(s) = \frac{1 - e^{-2s}}{s^2}.$$

From the linearity of the inverse transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} &= \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\frac{1}{s^2}\right\} - \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left\{\frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2}\right\} \\ &= t - u_2(t)(t-2). \end{aligned}$$

The function f may also be written as

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 2, \\ 2, & t \ge 2. \end{cases}$$

The following theorem contains another very useful property of Laplace transforms that is somewhat analogous to that given in Theorem 6.3.1.

Theorem 6.3.2 If $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ exists for $s > a \ge 0$, and if c is a constant, then

$$\mathcal{L}\{e^{ct}f(t)\} = F(s-c), \qquad s > a + c. \tag{7}$$

Conversely, if $f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$, then

$$e^{ct}f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s-c)\}. \tag{8}$$

According to Theorem 6.3.2, multiplication of $f(t)$ by e^{ct} results in a translation of the transform $F(s)$ a distance c in the positive s direction, and conversely. To prove this theorem, we evaluate $\mathcal{L}\{e^{ct}f(t)\}$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}\{e^{ct}f(t)\} &= \int_0^\infty e^{-st}e^{ct}f(t)\,dt = \int_0^\infty e^{-(s-c)t}f(t)\,dt \\ &= F(s-c), \end{aligned}$$

which is Eq. (7). The restriction $s > a + c$ follows from the observation that, according to hypothesis (ii) of Theorem 6.1.2, $|f(t)| \le Ke^{at}$; hence $|e^{ct}f(t)| \le Ke^{(a+c)t}$. Equation (8) is obtained by taking the inverse transform of Eq. (7), and the proof is complete.

The principal application of Theorem 6.3.2 is in the evaluation of certain inverse transforms, as illustrated by Example 5.

EXAMPLE 5

Find the inverse transform of

$$G(s) = \frac{1}{s^2 - 4s + 5}.$$

By completing the square in the denominator, we can write

$$G(s) = \frac{1}{(s-2)^2 + 1} = F(s-2),$$

where $F(s) = (s^2 + 1)^{-1}$. Since $\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\} = \sin t$, it follows from Theorem 6.3.2 that

$$g(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{G(s)\} = e^{2t}\sin t.$$

The results of this section are often useful in solving differential equations, particularly those that have discontinuous forcing functions. The next section is devoted to examples illustrating this fact.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 6, sketch the graph of the given function on the interval $t \geq 0$.

1. $g(t) = u_1(t) + 2u_3(t) - 6u_4(t)$
2. $g(t) = (t-3)u_2(t) - (t-2)u_3(t)$
3. $g(t) = f(t-\pi)u_\pi(t)$, where $f(t) = t^2$
4. $g(t) = f(t-3)u_3(t)$, where $f(t) = \sin t$
5. $g(t) = f(t-1)u_2(t)$, where $f(t) = 2t$
6. $g(t) = (t-1)u_1(t) - 2(t-2)u_2(t) + (t-3)u_3(t)$

In each of Problems 7 through 12:

(a) Sketch the graph of the given function.

(b) Express $f(t)$ in terms of the unit step function $u_c(t)$.

7. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq t < 3, \\ -2, & 3 \leq t < 5, \\ 2, & 5 \leq t < 7, \\ 1, & t \geq 7. \end{cases}$
8. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \leq t < 1, \\ -1, & 1 \leq t < 2, \\ 1, & 2 \leq t < 3, \\ -1, & 3 \leq t < 4, \\ 0, & t \geq 4. \end{cases}$
9. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \leq t < 2, \\ e^{-(t-2)}, & t \geq 2. \end{cases}$
10. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t^2, & 0 \leq t < 2, \\ 1, & t \geq 2. \end{cases}$
11. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \leq t < 1, \\ t-1, & 1 \leq t < 2, \\ t-2, & 2 \leq t < 3, \\ 0, & t \geq 3. \end{cases}$
12. $f(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \leq t < 2, \\ 2, & 2 \leq t < 5, \\ 7-t, & 5 \leq t < 7, \\ 0, & t \geq 7. \end{cases}$

In each of Problems 13 through 18, find the Laplace transform of the given function.

13. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < 2 \\ (t-2)^2, & t \geq 2 \end{cases}$
14. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < 1 \\ t^2 - 2t + 2, & t \geq 1 \end{cases}$
15. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & t < \pi \\ t - \pi, & \pi \leq t < 2\pi \\ 0, & t \geq 2\pi \end{cases}$
16. $f(t) = u_1(t) + 2u_3(t) - 6u_4(t)$
17. $f(t) = (t-3)u_2(t) - (t-2)u_3(t)$
18. $f(t) = t - u_1(t)(t-1), \qquad t \geq 0$

In each of Problems 19 through 24, find the inverse Laplace transform of the given function.

19. $F(s) = \dfrac{3!}{(s-2)^4}$
20. $F(s) = \dfrac{e^{-2s}}{s^2 + s - 2}$
21. $F(s) = \dfrac{2(s-1)e^{-2s}}{s^2 - 2s + 2}$
22. $F(s) = \dfrac{2e^{-2s}}{s^2 - 4}$
23. $F(s) = \dfrac{(s-2)e^{-s}}{s^2 - 4s + 3}$
24. $F(s) = \dfrac{e^{-s} + e^{-2s} - e^{-3s} - e^{-4s}}{s}$
25. Suppose that $F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$ exists for $s > a \geq 0$.

    (a) Show that if c is a positive constant, then

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(ct)\} = \frac{1}{c}F\left(\frac{s}{c}\right), \qquad s > ca.$$

(b) Show that if k is a positive constant, then

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(ks)\} = \frac{1}{k} f\left(\frac{t}{k}\right).$$

(c) Show that if a and b are constants with $a > 0$, then

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(as+b)\} = \frac{1}{a} e^{-bt/a} f\left(\frac{t}{a}\right).$$

In each of Problems 26 through 29, use the results of Problem 25 to find the inverse Laplace transform of the given function.

26. $F(s) = \dfrac{2^{n+1} n!}{s^{n+1}}$

27. $F(s) = \dfrac{2s+1}{4s^2+4s+5}$

28. $F(s) = \dfrac{1}{9s^2 - 12s + 3}$

29. $F(s) = \dfrac{e^2 e^{-4s}}{2s-1}$

In each of Problems 30 through 33, find the Laplace transform of the given function. In Problem 33, assume that term-by-term integration of the infinite series is permissible.

30. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 0, & t \ge 1 \end{cases}$

31. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1 \\ 0, & 1 \le t < 2 \\ 1, & 2 \le t < 3 \\ 0, & t \ge 3 \end{cases}$

32. $f(t) = 1 - u_1(t) + \cdots + u_{2n}(t) - u_{2n+1}(t) = 1 + \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{2n+1} (-1)^k u_k(t)$

33. $f(t) = 1 + \displaystyle\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^k u_k(t)$. See Figure 6.3.7.

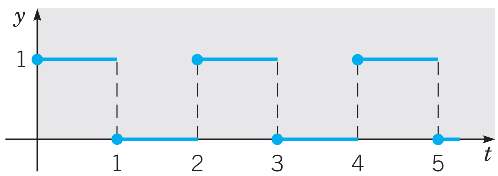


FIGURE 6.3.7 The function $f(t)$ in Problem 33; a square wave.

34. Let f satisfy $f(t+T) = f(t)$ for all $t \ge 0$ and for some fixed positive number T; f is said to be periodic with period T on $0 \le t < \infty$. Show that

$$\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\} = \frac{\displaystyle\int_0^T e^{-st} f(t)\, dt}{1 - e^{-sT}}.$$

In each of Problems 35 through 38, use the result of Problem 34 to find the Laplace transform of the given function.

35. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ 0, & 1 \le t < 2; \end{cases}$

$f(t+2) = f(t)$.

Compare with Problem 33.

36. $f(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ -1, & 1 \le t < 2; \end{cases}$

$f(t+2) = f(t)$.

See Figure 6.3.8.

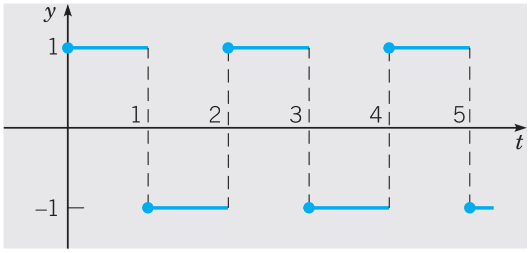


FIGURE 6.3.8 The function $f(t)$ in Problem 36; a square wave.

37. $f(t) = t, \qquad 0 \le t < 1;$
$f(t+1) = f(t).$
See Figure 6.3.9.

38. $f(t) = \sin t, \qquad 0 \le t < \pi;$
$f(t+\pi) = f(t).$
See Figure 6.3.10.

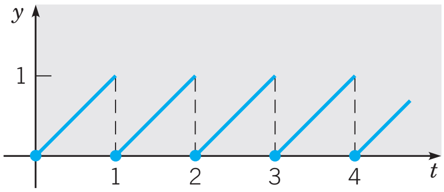


FIGURE 6.3.9 The function $f(t)$ in Problem 37; a sawtooth wave.

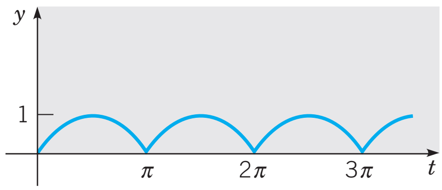


FIGURE 6.3.10 The function $f(t)$ in Problem 38; a rectified sine wave.

39. (a) If $f(t) = 1 - u_1(t)$, find $\mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$; compare with Problem 30. Sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$.

(b) Let $g(t) = \int_0^t f(\xi)\,d\xi$, where the function f is defined in part (a). Sketch the graph of $y = g(t)$ and find $\mathcal{L}\{g(t)\}$.

(c) Let $h(t) = g(t) - u_1(t)g(t-1)$, where g is defined in part (b). Sketch the graph of $y = h(t)$ and find $\mathcal{L}\{h(t)\}$.

40. Consider the function p defined by

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \le t < 1, \\ 2 - t, & 1 \le t < 2; \end{cases} \qquad p(t+2) = p(t).$$

(a) Sketch the graph of $y = p(t)$.

(b) Find $\mathcal{L}\{p(t)\}$ by noting that p is the periodic extension of the function h in Problem 39(c) and then using the result of Problem 34.

(c) Find $\mathcal{L}\{p(t)\}$ by noting that

$$p(t) = \int_0^t f(t)\,dt,$$

where f is the function in Problem 36, and then using Theorem 6.2.1.

23. Consider two interconnected tanks similar to those in Figure 7.1.6. Initially, Tank 1 contains 60 gal of water and Q_1^0 oz of salt, and Tank 2 contains 100 gal of water and Q_2^0 oz of salt. Water containing q_1 oz/gal of salt flows into Tank 1 at a rate of 3 gal/min. The mixture in Tank 1 flows out at a rate of 4 gal/min, of which half flows into Tank 2, while the remainder leaves the system. Water containing q_2 oz/gal of salt also flows into Tank 2 from the outside at the rate of 1 gal/min. The mixture in Tank 2 leaves it at a rate of 3 gal/min, of which some flows back into Tank 1 at a rate of 1 gal/min, while the rest leaves the system.

(a) Draw a diagram that depicts the flow process described above. Let $Q_1(t)$ and $Q_2(t)$, respectively, be the amount of salt in each tank at time t. Write down differential equations and initial conditions for Q_1 and Q_2 that model the flow process.

(b) Find the equilibrium values Q_1^E and Q_2^E in terms of the concentrations q_1 and q_2.

(c) Is it possible (by adjusting q_1 and q_2) to obtain $Q_1^E = 60$ and $Q_2^E = 50$ as an equilibrium state?

(d) Describe which equilibrium states are possible for this system for various values of q_1 and q_2.

7.2 Review of Matrices

For both theoretical and computational reasons, it is advisable to bring some of the results of matrix algebra[2] to bear on the initial value problem for a system of linear differential equations. For reference purposes, this section and the next are devoted to a brief summary of the facts that will be needed later. More details can be found in any elementary book on linear algebra. We assume, however, that you are familiar with determinants and how to evaluate them.

We designate matrices by boldfaced capitals $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}, \ldots$, occasionally using boldfaced Greek capitals $\boldsymbol{\Phi}, \boldsymbol{\Psi}, \ldots$. A matrix $\mathbf{A}$ consists of a rectangular array of numbers, or elements, arranged in m rows and n columns—that is,

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{1}$$

We speak of $\mathbf{A}$ as an $m \times n$ matrix. Although later in the chapter we will often assume that the elements of certain matrices are real numbers, in this section we assume that

[2]The properties of matrices were first extensively explored in 1858 in a paper by the English algebraist Arthur Cayley (1821–1895), although the word "matrix" was introduced by his good friend James Sylvester (1814–1897) in 1850. Cayley did some of his best mathematical work while practicing law from 1849 to 1863; he then became professor of mathematics at Cambridge, a position he held for the rest of his life. After Cayley's groundbreaking work, the development of matrix theory proceeded rapidly, with significant contributions by Charles Hermite, Georg Frobenius, and Camille Jordan, among others.

the elements of matrices may be complex numbers. The element lying in the ith row and jth column is designated by a_{ij}, the first subscript identifying its row and the second its column. Sometimes the notation (a_{ij}) is used to denote the matrix whose generic element is a_{ij}.

Associated with each matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is the matrix $\mathbf{A}^T$, which is known as the **transpose** of $\mathbf{A}$ and is obtained from $\mathbf{A}$ by interchanging the rows and columns of $\mathbf{A}$. Thus, if $\mathbf{A} = (a_{ij})$, then $\mathbf{A}^T = (a_{ji})$. Also, we will denote by $\overline{a}_{ij}$ the complex conjugate of a_{ij}, and by $\overline{\mathbf{A}}$ the matrix obtained from $\mathbf{A}$ by replacing each element a_{ij} by its conjugate $\overline{a}_{ij}$. The matrix $\overline{\mathbf{A}}$ is called the **conjugate** of $\mathbf{A}$. It will also be necessary to consider the transpose of the conjugate matrix $\overline{\mathbf{A}}^T$. This matrix is called the **adjoint** of $\mathbf{A}$ and will be denoted by $\mathbf{A}^*$.

For example, let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 - i \\ 4 + 3i & -5 + 2i \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then

$$\mathbf{A}^T = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 + 3i \\ 2 - i & -5 + 2i \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \overline{\mathbf{A}} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 + i \\ 4 - 3i & -5 - 2i \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{A}^* = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 4 - 3i \\ 2 + i & -5 - 2i \end{pmatrix}.$$

We are particularly interested in two somewhat special kinds of matrices: square matrices, which have the same number of rows and columns—that is, $m = n$; and vectors (or column vectors), which can be thought of as $n \times 1$ matrices, or matrices having only one column. Square matrices having n rows and n columns are said to be of order n. We denote (column) vectors by boldfaced lowercase letters: $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, \boldsymbol{\eta}, \ldots$. The transpose $\mathbf{x}^T$ of an $n \times 1$ column vector is a $1 \times n$ row vector—that is, the matrix consisting of one row whose elements are the same as the elements in the corresponding positions of $\mathbf{x}$.

Properties of Matrices.

1. **Equality.** Two $m \times n$ matrices $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are said to be equal if all corresponding elements are equal—that is, if $a_{ij} = b_{ij}$ for each i and j.

2. **Zero.** The symbol $\mathbf{0}$ will be used to denote the matrix (or vector) each of whose elements is zero.

3. **Addition.** The sum of two $m \times n$ matrices $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ is defined as the matrix obtained by adding corresponding elements:

$$\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = (a_{ij}) + (b_{ij}) = (a_{ij} + b_{ij}). \tag{2}$$

With this definition, it follows that matrix addition is commutative and associative, so that

$$\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}, \qquad \mathbf{A} + (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{C}. \tag{3}$$

4. **Multiplication by a Number.** The product of a matrix $\mathbf{A}$ by a real or complex number α is defined as follows:

$$\alpha\mathbf{A} = \alpha(a_{ij}) = (\alpha a_{ij}); \tag{4}$$

that is, each element of $\mathbf{A}$ is multiplied by α. The distributive laws

$$\alpha(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) = \alpha\mathbf{A} + \alpha\mathbf{B}, \qquad (\alpha + \beta)\mathbf{A} = \alpha\mathbf{A} + \beta\mathbf{A} \tag{5}$$

are satisfied for this type of multiplication. In particular, the negative of $\mathbf{A}$, denoted by $-\mathbf{A}$, is defined by

$$-\mathbf{A} = (-1)\mathbf{A}. \tag{6}$$

5. **Subtraction.** The difference $\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}$ of two $m \times n$ matrices is defined by

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A} + (-\mathbf{B}). \tag{7}$$

Thus

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = (a_{ij}) - (b_{ij}) = (a_{ij} - b_{ij}), \tag{8}$$

which is similar to Eq. (2).

6. **Multiplication.** The product $\mathbf{AB}$ of two matrices is defined whenever the number of columns in the first factor is the same as the number of rows in the second. If $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are $m \times n$ and $n \times r$ matrices, respectively, then the product $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB}$ is an $m \times r$ matrix. The element in the ith row and jth column of $\mathbf{C}$ is found by multiplying each element of the ith row of $\mathbf{A}$ by the corresponding element of the jth column of $\mathbf{B}$ and then adding the resulting products. In symbols,

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{ik} b_{kj}. \tag{9}$$

By direct calculation, it can be shown that matrix multiplication satisfies the associative law

$$(\mathbf{AB})\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{BC}) \tag{10}$$

and the distributive law

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{AB} + \mathbf{AC}. \tag{11}$$

However, in general, matrix multiplication is not commutative. For both products $\mathbf{AB}$ and $\mathbf{BA}$ to exist and to be of the same size, it is necessary that $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ be square matrices of the same order. Even in that case the two products are usually unequal, so that, in general,

$$\mathbf{AB} \neq \mathbf{BA}. \tag{12}$$

EXAMPLE 1

To illustrate the multiplication of matrices, and also the fact that matrix multiplication is not necessarily commutative, consider the matrices

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

From the definition of multiplication given in Eq. (9), we have

$$\mathbf{AB} = \begin{pmatrix} 2-2+2 & 1+2-1 & -1+0+1 \\ 0+2-2 & 0-2+1 & 0+0-1 \\ 4+1+2 & 2-1-1 & -2+0+1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 \\ 7 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Similarly, we find that

$$\mathbf{BA} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -3 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 & 2 \\ 4 & -5 & 4 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Clearly, $\mathbf{AB} \neq \mathbf{BA}$.

7. **Multiplication of Vectors.** There are several ways of forming a product of two vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$, each with n components. One is a direct extension to n dimensions of the familiar dot product from physics and calculus; we denote it by $\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y}$ and write

$$\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i y_i. \tag{13}$$

The result of Eq. (13) is a real or complex number, and it follows directly from Eq. (13) that

$$\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}^T\mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^T(\mathbf{y}+\mathbf{z}) = \mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{z}, \qquad (\alpha\mathbf{x})^T\mathbf{y} = \alpha(\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{x}^T(\alpha\mathbf{y}). \tag{14}$$

There is another vector product that is also defined for any two vectors having the same number of components. This product, denoted by $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$, is called the **scalar** or **inner product** and is defined by

$$(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \overline{y}_i. \tag{15}$$

The scalar product is also a real or complex number, and by comparing Eqs. (13) and (15), we see that

$$(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = \mathbf{x}^T\overline{\mathbf{y}}. \tag{16}$$

Thus, if all the elements of $\mathbf{y}$ are real, then the two products (13) and (15) are identical. From Eq. (15) it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) &= \overline{(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{x})}, \qquad & (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}+\mathbf{z}) &= (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) + (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}), \\ (\alpha\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) &= \alpha(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}), \qquad & (\mathbf{x}, \alpha\mathbf{y}) &= \overline{\alpha}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}). \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

Note that even if the vector $\mathbf{x}$ has elements with nonzero imaginary parts, the scalar product of $\mathbf{x}$ with itself yields a nonnegative real number

$$(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \bar{x}_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} |x_i|^2. \tag{18}$$

The nonnegative quantity $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x})^{1/2}$, often denoted by $\|\mathbf{x}\|$, is called the **length**, or **magnitude**, of $\mathbf{x}$. If $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$, then the two vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ are said to be **orthogonal**. For example, the unit vectors $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$ of three-dimensional vector geometry form an orthogonal set. On the other hand, if some of the elements of $\mathbf{x}$ are not real, then the product

$$\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i^2 \tag{19}$$

may not be a real number.

For example, let

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} i \\ -2 \\ 1+i \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix} 2-i \\ i \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} &= (i)(2-i) + (-2)(i) + (1+i)(3) = 4 + 3i, \\
(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) &= (i)(2+i) + (-2)(-i) + (1+i)(3) = 2 + 7i, \\
\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{x} &= (i)^2 + (-2)^2 + (1+i)^2 = 3 + 2i, \\
(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) &= (i)(-i) + (-2)(-2) + (1+i)(1-i) = 7.
\end{aligned}$$

8. **Identity.** The multiplicative identity, or simply the identity matrix $\mathbf{I}$, is given by

$$\mathbf{I} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{20}$$

From the definition of matrix multiplication, we have

$$\mathbf{AI} = \mathbf{IA} = \mathbf{A} \tag{21}$$

for any (square) matrix $\mathbf{A}$. Hence the commutative law does hold for square matrices if one of the matrices is the identity.

9. **Inverse.** The square matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is said to be **nonsingular** or **invertible** if there is another matrix $\mathbf{B}$ such that $\mathbf{AB} = \mathbf{I}$ and $\mathbf{BA} = \mathbf{I}$, where $\mathbf{I}$ is the identity. If there is such a $\mathbf{B}$, it can be shown that there is only one. It is called the multiplicative inverse, or simply the inverse, of $\mathbf{A}$, and we write $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}$. Then

$$\mathbf{AA}^{-1} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{I}. \tag{22}$$

Matrices that do not have an inverse are called **singular** or **noninvertible**.

There are various ways to compute $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ from $\mathbf{A}$, assuming that it exists. One way involves the use of determinants. Associated with each element a_{ij} of a given matrix is the minor M_{ij}, which is the determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting the ith row and jth column of the original matrix—that is, the row and column containing a_{ij}. Also associated with each element a_{ij} is the cofactor C_{ij} defined by the equation

$$C_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} M_{ij}. \tag{23}$$

If $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}$, then it can be shown that the general element b_{ij} is given by

$$b_{ij} = \frac{C_{ji}}{\det \mathbf{A}}. \tag{24}$$

Although Eq. (24) is not an efficient way[3] to calculate $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$, it does suggest a condition that $\mathbf{A}$ must satisfy for it to have an inverse. In fact, the condition is both necessary and sufficient: $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular if and only if $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$. If $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$, then $\mathbf{A}$ is singular.

Another (and usually better) way to compute $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ is by means of elementary row operations. There are three such operations:

1. Interchange of two rows.
2. Multiplication of a row by a nonzero scalar.
3. Addition of any multiple of one row to another row.

The transformation of a matrix by a sequence of elementary row operations is referred to as **row reduction** or **Gaussian[4] elimination**. Any nonsingular matrix $\mathbf{A}$ can be transformed into the identity $\mathbf{I}$ by a systematic sequence of these operations. It is possible to show that if the same sequence of operations is then performed on $\mathbf{I}$, it is transformed into $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$. It is most efficient to perform the sequence of operations on both matrices at the same time by forming the augmented matrix $\mathbf{A} \,|\, \mathbf{I}$. The following example illustrates the calculation of an inverse matrix in this way.

EXAMPLE 2

Find the inverse of

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

---

[3] For large n the number of multiplications required to evaluate $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ by Eq. (24) is proportional to $n!$. If we use a more efficient method, such as the row reduction procedure described in this section, the number of multiplications is proportional only to n^3. Even for small values of n (such as $n = 4$), determinants are not an economical tool in calculating inverses, and row reduction methods are preferred.

[4] Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855) was born in Brunswick (Germany) and spent most of his life as professor of astronomy and director of the Observatory at the University of Göttingen. Gauss made major contributions to many areas of mathematics, including number theory, algebra, non-Euclidean and differential geometry, and analysis, as well as to more applied fields such as geodesy, statistics, and celestial mechanics. He is generally considered to be among the half-dozen best mathematicians of all time.

We begin by forming the augmented matrix $\mathbf{A}\,|\,\mathbf{I}$:

$$\mathbf{A}\,|\,\mathbf{I} = \left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right).$$

The matrix $\mathbf{A}$ can be transformed into $\mathbf{I}$ by the following sequence of operations, and at the same time, $\mathbf{I}$ is transformed into $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$. The result of each step appears below the statement.

(a) Obtain zeros in the off-diagonal positions in the first column by adding (-3) times the first row to the second row and adding (-2) times the first row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 5 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 5 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

(b) Obtain a 1 in the diagonal position in the second column by multiplying the second row by $\frac{1}{2}$.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & -1 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 5 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

(c) Obtain zeros in the off-diagonal positions in the second column by adding the second row to the first row and adding (-4) times the second row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -5 & 4 & -2 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

(d) Obtain a 1 in the diagonal position in the third column by multiplying the third row by $(-\frac{1}{5})$.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{4}{5} & \frac{2}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \end{array}\right)$$

(e) Obtain zeros in the off-diagonal positions in the third column by adding $(-\frac{3}{2})$ times the third row to the first row and adding $(-\frac{5}{2})$ times the third row to the second row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{7}{10} & -\frac{1}{10} & \frac{3}{10} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{4}{5} & \frac{2}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} \end{array}\right)$$

The last of these matrices is $\mathbf{I}\,|\,\mathbf{A}^{-1}$, a fact that can be verified by direct multiplication with the original matrix $\mathbf{A}$.

This example was made slightly simpler by the fact that the given matrix $\mathbf{A}$ had a 1 in the upper left corner ($a_{11} = 1$). If this is not the case, then the first step is to produce a 1 there by multiplying the first row by $1/a_{11}$, as long as $a_{11} \neq 0$. If $a_{11} = 0$, then the first row must be interchanged with some other row to bring a nonzero element into the upper left position before proceeding. If this cannot be done, because every element in the first column is zero, then the matrix has no inverse and is singular.

A similar situation may occur at later stages of the process as well, and the remedy is the same: interchange the given row with a lower row so as to bring a nonzero element to the desired diagonal location. If this cannot be done, then the original matrix is singular.

Matrix Functions. We sometimes need to consider vectors or matrices whose elements are functions of a real variable t. We write

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} x_1(t) \\ \vdots \\ x_n(t) \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{A}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}(t) & \cdots & a_{1n}(t) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1}(t) & \cdots & a_{mn}(t) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{25}$$

respectively.

The matrix $\mathbf{A}(t)$ is said to be continuous at $t = t_0$ or on an interval $\alpha < t < \beta$ if each element of $\mathbf{A}$ is a continuous function at the given point or on the given interval. Similarly, $\mathbf{A}(t)$ is said to be differentiable if each of its elements is differentiable, and its derivative $d\mathbf{A}/dt$ is defined by

$$\frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt} = \left(\frac{da_{ij}}{dt}\right); \tag{26}$$

that is, each element of $d\mathbf{A}/dt$ is the derivative of the corresponding element of $\mathbf{A}$. In the same way, the integral of a matrix function is defined as

$$\int_a^b \mathbf{A}(t)\,dt = \left(\int_a^b a_{ij}(t)\,dt\right). \tag{27}$$

For example, if

$$\mathbf{A}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \sin t & t \\ 1 & \cos t \end{pmatrix},$$

then

$$\mathbf{A}'(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & 1 \\ 0 & -\sin t \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \int_0^\pi \mathbf{A}(t)\,dt = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & \pi^2/2 \\ \pi & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Many of the rules of elementary calculus extend easily to matrix functions; in particular,

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{CA}) = \mathbf{C}\frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt}, \qquad \text{where } \mathbf{C} \text{ is a constant matrix;} \tag{28}$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}) = \frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{B}}{dt}; \tag{29}$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{AB}) = \mathbf{A}\frac{d\mathbf{B}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{A}}{dt}\mathbf{B}. \tag{30}$$

In Eqs. (28) and (30), care must be taken in each term to avoid interchanging the order of multiplication. The definitions expressed by Eqs. (26) and (27) also apply as special cases to vectors.

To conclude this section: some important operations on matrices are accomplished by applying the operation separately to each element of the matrix. Examples include multiplication by a number, differentiation, and integration. However, this is not true of many other operations. For instance, the square of a matrix is not calculated by squaring each of its elements.

PROBLEMS

1. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 & 3 \\ -1 & 5 & 0 \\ 6 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, find
   (a) $2\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$
   (b) $\mathbf{A} - 4\mathbf{B}$
   (c) $\mathbf{AB}$
   (d) $\mathbf{BA}$
2. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1+i & -1+2i \\ 3+2i & 2-i \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} i & 3 \\ 2 & -2i \end{pmatrix}$, find
   (a) $\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{B}$
   (b) $3\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}$
   (c) $\mathbf{AB}$
   (d) $\mathbf{BA}$
3. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & -3 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -1 & -1 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, find
   (a) $\mathbf{A}^T$
   (b) $\mathbf{B}^T$
   (c) $\mathbf{A}^T + \mathbf{B}^T$
   (d) $(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B})^T$
4. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3-2i & 1+i \\ 2-i & -2+3i \end{pmatrix}$, find
   (a) $\mathbf{A}^T$
   (b) $\overline{\mathbf{A}}$
   (c) $\mathbf{A}^*$
5. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, verify that $2(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) = 2\mathbf{A} + 2\mathbf{B}$.
6. If $\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 0 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$, $\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$, verify that
   (a) $(\mathbf{AB})\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A}(\mathbf{BC})$
   (b) $(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} + (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C})$
   (c) $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{AB} + \mathbf{AC}$
7. Prove each of the following laws of matrix algebra:
   (a) $\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}$
   (b) $\mathbf{A} + (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{C}$
   (c) $\alpha(\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) = \alpha\mathbf{A} + \alpha\mathbf{B}$
   (d) $(\alpha + \beta)\mathbf{A} = \alpha\mathbf{A} + \beta\mathbf{A}$
   (e) $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{BC}) = (\mathbf{AB})\mathbf{C}$
   (f) $\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{AB} + \mathbf{AC}$
8. If $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3i \\ 1-i \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix} -1+i \\ 2 \\ 3-i \end{pmatrix}$, find
   (a) $\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y}$
   (b) $\mathbf{y}^T\mathbf{y}$
   (c) $(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$
   (d) $(\mathbf{y}, \mathbf{y})$

9. If $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1-2i \\ i \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{y} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3-i \\ 1+2i \end{pmatrix}$, show that

(a) $\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}^T\mathbf{x}$ (b) $(\mathbf{x},\mathbf{y}) = \overline{(\mathbf{y},\mathbf{x})}$

In each of Problems 10 through 19, either compute the inverse of the given matrix, or else show that it is singular.

10. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ -2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

11. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 6 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

12. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$

13. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

14. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 1 & 8 \\ 1 & -2 & -7 \end{pmatrix}$

15. $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$

16. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

17. $\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 4 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

18. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

19. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & -4 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ -2 & 2 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

20. If $\mathbf{A}$ is a square matrix, and if there are two matrices $\mathbf{B}$ and $\mathbf{C}$ such that $\mathbf{AB} = \mathbf{I}$ and $\mathbf{CA} = \mathbf{I}$, show that $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{C}$. Thus, if a matrix has an inverse, it can have only one.

21. If $\mathbf{A}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^t & 2e^{-t} & e^{2t} \\ 2e^t & e^{-t} & -e^{2t} \\ -e^t & 3e^{-t} & 2e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{B}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 2e^t & e^{-t} & 3e^{2t} \\ -e^t & 2e^{-t} & e^{2t} \\ 3e^t & -e^{-t} & -e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$, find

(a) $\mathbf{A} + 3\mathbf{B}$ (b) $\mathbf{AB}$

(c) $d\mathbf{A}/dt$ (d) $\int_0^1 \mathbf{A}(t)\,dt$

In each of Problems 22 through 24, verify that the given vector satisfies the given differential equation.

22. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}$

23. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} + \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^t, \qquad \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^t + 2\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} te^t$

24. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -8 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + 2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}$

In each of Problems 25 and 26, verify that the given matrix satisfies the given differential equation.

25. $\mathbf{\Psi}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{\Psi}, \qquad \mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-3t} & e^{2t} \\ -4e^{-3t} & e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}$

26. $\mathbf{\Psi}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{\Psi}, \qquad \mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{t} & e^{-2t} & e^{3t} \\ -4e^{t} & -e^{-2t} & 2e^{3t} \\ -e^{t} & -e^{-2t} & e^{3t} \end{pmatrix}$

7.3 Systems of Linear Algebraic Equations; Linear Independence, Eigenvalues, Eigenvectors

In this section we review some results from linear algebra that are important for the solution of systems of linear differential equations. Some of these results are easily proved and others are not; since we are interested simply in summarizing some useful information in compact form, we give no indication of proofs in either case. All the results in this section depend on some basic facts about the solution of systems of linear algebraic equations.

Systems of Linear Algebraic Equations. A set of n simultaneous linear algebraic equations in n variables

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n &= b_1, \\ &\vdots \\ a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{nn}x_n &= b_n \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

can be written as

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}, \tag{2}$$

where the $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and the vector $\mathbf{b}$ are given, and the components of $\mathbf{x}$ are to be determined. If $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$, the system is said to be **homogeneous**; otherwise, it is **nonhomogeneous**.

If the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular—that is, if $\det \mathbf{A}$ is not zero—then there is a unique solution of the system (2). Since $\mathbf{A}$ is nonsingular, $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ exists, and the solution can be found by multiplying each side of Eq. (2) on the left by $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$; thus

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{b}. \tag{3}$$

In particular, the homogeneous problem $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{0}$, corresponding to $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$ in Eq. (2), has only the trivial solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$.

On the other hand, if $\mathbf{A}$ is singular—that is, if $\det \mathbf{A}$ is zero—then solutions of Eq. (2) either do not exist, or do exist but are not unique. Since $\mathbf{A}$ is singular, $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$ does not exist, so Eq. (3) is no longer valid. The homogeneous system

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0} \tag{4}$$

has (infinitely many) nonzero solutions in addition to the trivial solution. The situation for the nonhomogeneous system (2) is more complicated. This system has no solution unless the vector $\mathbf{b}$ satisfies a certain further condition. This condition is that

$$(\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{y}) = 0, \tag{5}$$

for all vectors $\mathbf{y}$ satisfying $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$, where $\mathbf{A}^*$ is the adjoint of $\mathbf{A}$. If condition (5) is met, then the system (2) has (infinitely many) solutions. These solutions are of the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)} + \boldsymbol{\xi}, \tag{6}$$

where $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ is a particular solution of Eq. (2), and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is the most general solution of the homogeneous system (4). Note the resemblance between Eq. (6) and the solution of a nonhomogeneous linear differential equation. The proofs of some of the preceding statements are outlined in Problems 26 through 30.

The results in the preceding paragraph are important as a means of classifying the solutions of linear systems. However, for solving particular systems, it is generally best to use row reduction to transform the system into a much simpler one from which the solution(s), if there are any, can be written down easily. To do this efficiently, we can form the augmented matrix

$$\mathbf{A} \mid \mathbf{b} = \left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1n} & b_1 \\ \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \cdots & a_{nn} & b_n \end{array}\right) \tag{7}$$

by adjoining the vector $\mathbf{b}$ to the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ as an additional column. The vertical line replaces the equals sign and is said to partition the augmented matrix. We now perform row operations on the augmented matrix so as to transform $\mathbf{A}$ into an upper triangular matrix—that is, a matrix whose elements below the main diagonal are all zero. Once this is done, it is easy to see whether the system has solutions, and to find them if it does. Observe that elementary row operations on the augmented matrix (7) correspond to legitimate operations on the equations in the system (1). The following examples illustrate the process.

EXAMPLE 1

Solve the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 7, \\ -x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 &= -5, \\ 2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 &= 4. \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

The augmented matrix for the system (8) is

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 & -5 \\ 2 & -1 & -1 & 4 \end{array}\right). \tag{9}$$

We now perform row operations on the matrix (9) with a view to introducing zeros in the lower left part of the matrix. Each step is described and the result recorded below.

(a) Add the first row to the second row, and add (-2) times the first row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 & -7 & -10 \end{array}\right)$$

(b) Multiply the second row by -1.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 3 & -7 & -10 \end{array}\right)$$

(c) Add (-3) times the second row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & -4 & -4 \end{array}\right)$$

(d) Divide the third row by -4.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -2 & 3 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

The matrix obtained in this manner corresponds to the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 7, \\ x_2 - x_3 &= -2, \\ x_3 &= 1, \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

which is equivalent to the original system (8). Note that the coefficients in Eqs. (10) form a triangular matrix. From the last of Eqs. (10) we have $x_3 = 1$, from the second equation $x_2 = -2 + x_3 = -1$, and from the first equation $x_1 = 7 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 = 2$. Thus we obtain

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

which is the solution of the given system (8). Incidentally, since the solution is unique, we conclude that the coefficient matrix is nonsingular.

EXAMPLE 2

Discuss solutions of the system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= b_1, \\ -x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 &= b_2, \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 &= b_3 \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

for various values of b_1, b_2, and b_3.

Observe that the coefficients in the system (11) are the same as those in the system (8) except for the coefficient of x_3 in the third equation. The augmented matrix for the system (11) is

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|c} 1 & -2 & 3 & b_1 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 & b_2 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 & b_3 \end{array}\right). \tag{12}$$

By performing steps (a), (b), and (c) as in Example 1, we transform the matrix (12) into

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|c} 1 & -2 & 3 & b_1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -b_1 - b_2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & b_1 + 3b_2 + b_3 \end{array}\right). \tag{13}$$

The equation corresponding to the third row of the matrix (13) is

$$b_1 + 3b_2 + b_3 = 0; \tag{14}$$

thus the system (11) has no solution unless the condition (14) is satisfied by b_1, b_2, and b_3. It is possible to show that this condition is just Eq. (5) for the system (11).

Let us now assume that $b_1 = 2, b_2 = 1$, and $b_3 = -5$, in which case Eq. (14) is satisfied. Then the first two rows of the matrix (13) correspond to the equations

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 2, \\ x_2 - x_3 &= -3. \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

To solve the system (15), we can choose one of the unknowns arbitrarily and then solve for the other two. If we let $x_3 = \alpha$, where α is arbitrary, it then follows that

$$\begin{aligned} x_2 &= \alpha - 3, \\ x_1 &= 2(\alpha - 3) - 3\alpha + 2 = -\alpha - 4. \end{aligned}$$

If we write the solution in vector notation, we have

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} -\alpha - 4 \\ \alpha - 3 \\ \alpha \end{pmatrix} = \alpha \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{16}$$

It is easy to verify that the second term on the right side of Eq. (16) is a solution of the nonhomogeneous system (11) and that the first term is the most general solution of the homogeneous system corresponding to (11).

Row reduction is also useful in solving homogeneous systems and systems in which the number of equations is different from the number of unknowns.

Linear Dependence and Independence. A set of k vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ is said to be **linearly dependent** if there exists a set of real or complex numbers $c_1, \dots, c_k$, at least one of which is nonzero, such that

$$c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{x}^{(k)} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{17}$$

In other words, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ are linearly dependent if there is a linear relation among them. On the other hand, if the only set $c_1, \dots, c_k$ for which Eq. (17) is satisfied is $c_1 = c_2 = \cdots = c_k = 0$, then $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ are said to be **linearly independent**.

Consider now a set of n vectors, each of which has n components. Let $x_{ij} = x_i^{(j)}$ be the ith component of the vector $\mathbf{x}^{(j)}$, and let $\mathbf{X} = (x_{ij})$. Then Eq. (17) can be written as

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1^{(1)}c_1 + \cdots + x_1^{(n)}c_n \\ \vdots \qquad\qquad \vdots \\ x_n^{(1)}c_1 + \cdots + x_n^{(n)}c_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_{11}c_1 + \cdots + x_{1n}c_n \\ \vdots \qquad\qquad \vdots \\ x_{n1}c_1 + \cdots + x_{nn}c_n \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{0},$$

or, equivalently,

$$\mathbf{Xc} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{18}$$

If $\det \mathbf{X} \neq 0$, then the only solution of Eq. (18) is $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$, but if $\det \mathbf{X} = 0$, there are nonzero solutions. Thus the set of vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ is linearly independent if and only if $\det \mathbf{X} \neq 0$.

EXAMPLE 3

Determine whether the vectors

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 1 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix} \tag{19}$$

are linearly independent or linearly dependent. If they are linearly dependent, find a linear relation among them.

To determine whether $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ are linearly dependent, we seek constants c_1, c_2, and c_3 such that

$$c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)} + c_3\mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{20}$$

Equation (20) can also be written in the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & -11 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ c_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{21}$$

and solved by means of elementary row operations starting from the augmented matrix

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 2 & -4 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 & -11 & 0 \end{array}\right). \tag{22}$$

We proceed as in Examples 1 and 2.

(a) Add (-2) times the first row to the second row, and add the first row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 2 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 & 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -15 & 0 \end{array}\right)$$

(b) Divide the second row by -3; then add (-5) times the second row to the third row.

$$\left(\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 2 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right)$$

Thus we obtain the equivalent system

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 + 2c_2 - 4c_3 &= 0, \\ c_2 - 3c_3 &= 0. \end{aligned} \tag{23}$$

From the second of Eqs. (23) we have $c_2 = 3c_3$, and then from the first we obtain $c_1 = 4c_3 - 2c_2 = -2c_3$. Thus we have solved for c_1 and c_2 in terms of c_3, with the latter remaining arbitrary. If we choose $c_3 = -1$ for convenience, then $c_1 = 2$ and $c_2 = -3$. In this case the relation (20) becomes

$$2\mathbf{x}^{(1)} - 3\mathbf{x}^{(2)} - \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \mathbf{0},$$

and the given vectors are linearly dependent.

Alternatively, we can compute $\det(x_{ij})$, whose columns are the components of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$, respectively. Thus

$$\det(x_{ij}) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & -11 \end{vmatrix}$$

and direct calculation shows that it is zero. Hence $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$, $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ are linearly dependent. However, if the coefficients c_1, c_2, and c_3 are required, we still need to solve Eq. (20) to find them.

Frequently, it is useful to think of the columns (or rows) of a matrix $\mathbf{A}$ as vectors. These column (or row) vectors are linearly independent if and only if $\det \mathbf{A} \neq 0$. Further, if $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{AB}$, then it can be shown that $\det \mathbf{C} = (\det \mathbf{A})(\det \mathbf{B})$. Therefore, if the columns (or rows) of both $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are linearly independent, then the columns (or rows) of $\mathbf{C}$ are also linearly independent.

Now let us extend the concepts of linear dependence and independence to a set of vector functions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ defined on an interval $\alpha < t < \beta$. The vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ are said to be linearly dependent on $\alpha < t < \beta$ if there exists a set of constants $c_1, \ldots, c_k$, not all of which are zero, such that

$$c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t) = \mathbf{0} \quad \text{for all } t \text{ in the interval.}$$

Otherwise, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ are said to be linearly independent. Note that if $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ are linearly dependent on an interval, they are linearly dependent at each point in the interval. However, if $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}(t)$ are linearly independent on an interval, they may or may not be linearly independent at each point; they may, in fact, be linearly dependent at each point, but with different sets of constants at different points. See Problem 15 for an example.

Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors. The equation

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{y} \tag{24}$$

can be viewed as a linear transformation that maps (or transforms) a given vector $\mathbf{x}$ into a new vector $\mathbf{y}$. Vectors that are transformed into multiples of themselves are important in many applications.[5] To find such vectors, we set $\mathbf{y} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$, where λ is a scalar proportionality factor, and seek solutions of the equation

$$\mathbf{Ax} = \lambda\mathbf{x}, \tag{25}$$

or

$$(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I})\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{26}$$

The latter equation has nonzero solutions if and only if λ is chosen so that

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I}) = 0. \tag{27}$$

Equation (27) is a polynomial equation of degree n in λ and is called the **characteristic equation** of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$. Values of λ that satisfy Eq. (27) may be either real- or complex-valued and are called **eigenvalues** of $\mathbf{A}$. The nonzero solutions of Eq. (25) or (26) that are obtained by using such a value of λ are called the **eigenvectors** corresponding to that eigenvalue.

If $\mathbf{A}$ is a 2×2 matrix, then Eq. (26) is

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} - \lambda & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} - \lambda \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{28}$$

and Eq. (27) becomes

$$(a_{11} - \lambda)(a_{22} - \lambda) - a_{12}a_{21} = 0,$$

or

$$\lambda^2 - (a_{11} + a_{22})\lambda + a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21} = 0. \tag{29}$$

The following example illustrates how eigenvalues and eigenvectors are found.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{30}$$

The eigenvalues λ and eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}$ satisfy the equation $(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I})\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 - \lambda & -1 \\ 4 & -2 - \lambda \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{31}$$

[5]For example, this problem is encountered in finding the principal axes of stress or strain in an elastic body, and in finding the modes of free vibration in a conservative system with a finite number of degrees of freedom.

The eigenvalues are the roots of the equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I}) = \begin{vmatrix} 3-\lambda & -1 \\ 4 & -2-\lambda \end{vmatrix} = \lambda^2 - \lambda - 2 = (\lambda - 2)(\lambda + 1) = 0. \tag{32}$$

Thus the eigenvalues are $\lambda_1 = 2$ and $\lambda_2 = -1$.

To find the eigenvectors, we return to Eq. (31) and replace λ by each of the eigenvalues in turn. For $\lambda = 2$ we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 4 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{33}$$

Hence each row of this vector equation leads to the condition $x_1 - x_2 = 0$, so x_1 and x_2 are equal but their value is not determined. If $x_1 = c$, then $x_2 = c$ also, and the eigenvector $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = c\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad c \neq 0. \tag{34}$$

Thus there is an infinite family of eigenvectors, indexed by the arbitrary constant c, corresponding to the eigenvalue λ_1. We will choose a single member of this family as a representative of the rest; in this example it seems simplest to let $c = 1$. Then, instead of Eq. (34), we write

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{35}$$

and remember that any nonzero multiple of this vector is also an eigenvector. We say that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ is the eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda_1 = 2$.

Now, setting $\lambda = -1$ in Eq. (31), we obtain

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{36}$$

Again we obtain a single condition on x_1 and x_2, namely, $4x_1 - x_2 = 0$. Thus the eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda_2 = -1$ is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{37}$$

or any nonzero multiple of this vector.

As Example 4 illustrates, eigenvectors are determined only up to an arbitrary nonzero multiplicative constant; if this constant is specified in some way, then the eigenvectors are said to be **normalized**. In Example 4, we chose the constant c so that the components of the eigenvectors would be small integers. However, any other choice of c is equally valid, although perhaps less convenient. Sometimes it is useful to normalize an eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$ by choosing the constant so that its length $\|\mathbf{x}\| = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x})^{1/2} = 1$.

Since the characteristic equation (27) for an $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is a polynomial equation of degree n in λ, each such matrix has n eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n$, some of which may be repeated. If a given eigenvalue appears m times as a root of Eq. (27), then that eigenvalue is said to have **algebraic multiplicity** m. Each eigenvalue has at least one associated eigenvector, and an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity m may have q

linearly independent eigenvectors. The integer q is called the **geometric multiplicity** of the eigenvalue, and it is possible to show that

$$1 \le q \le m. \tag{38}$$

Further, examples demonstrate that q may be any integer in this interval. If each eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$ is **simple** (has algebraic multiplicity 1), then each eigenvalue also has geometric multiplicity 1.

It is possible to show that if λ_1 and λ_2 are two eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$ and if $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, then their corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent (Problem 34). This result extends to any set $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_k$ of distinct eigenvalues: their eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(k)}$ are linearly independent. Thus, if each eigenvalue of an $n \times n$ matrix is simple, then the n eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$, one for each eigenvalue, are linearly independent. On the other hand, if $\mathbf{A}$ has one or more repeated eigenvalues, then there may be fewer than n linearly independent eigenvectors associated with $\mathbf{A}$, since for a repeated eigenvalue we may have $q < m$. As we will see in Section 7.8, this fact may lead to complications later on in the solution of systems of differential equations.

EXAMPLE 5

Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{39}$$

The eigenvalues λ and eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}$ satisfy the equation $(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I})\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} -\lambda & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -\lambda \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{40}$$

The eigenvalues are the roots of the equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I}) = \begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -\lambda \end{vmatrix} = -\lambda^3 + 3\lambda + 2 = 0. \tag{41}$$

The roots of Eq. (41) are $\lambda_1 = 2$, $\lambda_2 = -1$, and $\lambda_3 = -1$. Thus 2 is a simple eigenvalue, and -1 is an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 2, or a double eigenvalue.

To find the eigenvector $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue λ_1, we substitute $\lambda = 2$ in Eq. (40); this gives the system

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{42}$$

We can reduce this to the equivalent system

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{43}$$

by elementary row operations. Solving this system yields the eigenvector

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{44}$$

For $\lambda = -1$, Eqs. (40) reduce immediately to the single equation

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 0. \tag{45}$$

Thus values for two of the quantities x_1, x_2, x_3 can be chosen arbitrarily, and the third is determined from Eq. (45). For example, if $x_1 = c_1$ and $x_2 = c_2$, then $x_3 = -c_1 - c_2$. In vector notation we have

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ -c_1 - c_2 \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{46}$$

For example, by choosing $c_1 = 1$ and $c_2 = 0$, we obtain the eigenvector

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{47}$$

Any nonzero multiple of $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ is also an eigenvector, but a second independent eigenvector can be found by making another choice of c_1 and c_2—for instance, $c_1 = 0$ and $c_2 = 1$. In this case we obtain

$$\mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{48}$$

which is linearly independent of $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$. Therefore, in this example, two linearly independent eigenvectors are associated with the double eigenvalue.

An important special class of matrices, called **self-adjoint** or **Hermitian** matrices, are those for which $\mathbf{A}^* = \mathbf{A}$; that is, $\overline{a}_{ji} = a_{ij}$. Hermitian matrices include as a subclass real symmetric matrices—that is, matrices that have real elements and for which $\mathbf{A}^T = \mathbf{A}$. The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of Hermitian matrices always have the following useful properties:

1. All eigenvalues are real.
2. There always exists a full set of n linearly independent eigenvectors, regardless of the algebraic multiplicities of the eigenvalues.
3. If $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are eigenvectors that correspond to different eigenvalues, then $(\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}) = 0$. Thus, if all eigenvalues are simple, then the associated eigenvectors form an orthogonal set of vectors.
4. Corresponding to an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity m, it is possible to choose m eigenvectors that are mutually orthogonal. Thus the full set of n eigenvectors can always be chosen to be orthogonal as well as linearly independent.

The proofs of statements 1 and 3 above are outlined in Problems 32 and 33. Example 5 involves a real symmetric matrix and illustrates properties 1, 2, and 3, but the choice we have made for $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ does not illustrate property 4. However, it is always possible to choose an $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ so that $(\mathbf{x}^{(2)}, \mathbf{x}^{(3)}) = 0$. For instance, in Example 5 we could have chosen $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ as before and $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}$ by using $c_1 = 1$ and $c_2 = -2$ in Eq. (46). In this way we obtain

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

as the eigenvectors associated with the eigenvalue $\lambda = -1$. These eigenvectors are orthogonal to each other as well as to the eigenvector $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ that corresponds to the eigenvalue $\lambda = 2$.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 6, either solve the given system of equations, or else show that there is no solution.

1. $$\begin{aligned} x_1 \qquad - x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ -x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

2. $$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

3. $$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 2 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

4. $$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

5. $$\begin{aligned} x_1 \qquad - x_3 &= 0 \\ 3x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ -x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

6. $$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= -2 \\ -2x_1 - 4x_2 + 2x_3 &= 4 \\ 2x_1 + 4x_2 - 2x_3 &= -4 \end{aligned}$$

In each of Problems 7 through 11, determine whether the members of the given set of vectors are linearly independent. If they are linearly dependent, find a linear relation among them. The vectors are written as row vectors to save space but may be considered as column vectors; that is, the transposes of the given vectors may be used instead of the vectors themselves.

7. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (1, 1, 0)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (0, 1, 1)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (1, 0, 1)$
8. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (2, 1, 0)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (0, 1, 0)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (-1, 2, 0)$
9. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (1, 2, 2, 3)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (-1, 0, 3, 1)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (-2, -1, 1, 0)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(4)} = (-3, 0, -1, 3)$
10. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (1, 2, -1, 0)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (2, 3, 1, -1)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (-1, 0, 2, 2)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(4)} = (3, -1, 1, 3)$
11. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = (1, 2, -2)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)} = (3, 1, 0)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)} = (2, -1, 1)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(4)} = (4, 3, -2)$
12. Suppose that each of the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}$ has n components, where $n < m$. Show that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}$ are linearly dependent.

In each of Problems 13 and 14, determine whether the members of the given set of vectors are linearly independent for $-\infty < t < \infty$. If they are linearly dependent, find the linear relation among them. As in Problems 7 through 11, the vectors are written as row vectors to save space.

13. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = (e^{-t}, 2e^{-t})$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = (e^{-t}, e^{-t})$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t) = (3e^{-t}, 0)$
14. $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = (2\sin t, \sin t)$, $\quad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = (\sin t, 2\sin t)$

15. Let

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^t \\ te^t \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ t \end{pmatrix}.$$

Show that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ are linearly dependent at each point in the interval $0 \le t \le 1$. Nevertheless, show that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ are linearly independent on $0 \le t \le 1$.

In each of Problems 16 through 25, find all eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the given matrix.

16. $\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

17. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

18. $\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$

19. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ -i & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

20. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \sqrt{3} \\ \sqrt{3} & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

21. $\begin{pmatrix} -3 & 3/4 \\ -5 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

22. $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & -2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

23. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 4 & 1 \\ -2 & -4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$

24. $\begin{pmatrix} 11/9 & -2/9 & 8/9 \\ -2/9 & 2/9 & 10/9 \\ 8/9 & 10/9 & 5/9 \end{pmatrix}$

25. $\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 2 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

Problems 26 through 30 deal with the problem of solving $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ when $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$.

26. (a) Suppose that $\mathbf{A}$ is a real-valued $n \times n$ matrix. Show that $(\mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{y}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{A}^T\mathbf{y})$ for any vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$.
Hint: You may find it simpler to consider first the case $n = 2$; then extend the result to an arbitrary value of n.
(b) If $\mathbf{A}$ is not necessarily real, show that $(\mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{y}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y})$ for any vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$.
(c) If $\mathbf{A}$ is Hermitian, show that $(\mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{y}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{Ay})$ for any vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$.

27. Suppose that, for a given matrix $\mathbf{A}$, there is a nonzero vector $\mathbf{x}$ such that $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{0}$. Show that there is also a nonzero vector $\mathbf{y}$ such that $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$.

28. Suppose that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$ and that $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ has solutions. Show that $(\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$, where $\mathbf{y}$ is any solution of $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$. Verify that this statement is true for the set of equations in Example 2.
Hint: Use the result of Problem 26(b).

29. Suppose that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$ and that $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ is a solution of $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$. Show that if $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is a solution of $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}$ and α is any constant, then $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)} + \alpha\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is also a solution of $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$.

30. Suppose that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$ and that $\mathbf{y}$ is a solution of $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$. Show that if $(\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{y}) = 0$ for every such $\mathbf{y}$, then $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$ has solutions. Note that this is the converse of Problem 28; the form of the solution is given by Problem 29.
Hint: What does the relation $\mathbf{A}^*\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ say about the rows of $\mathbf{A}$? Again, it may be helpful to consider the case $n = 2$ first.

31. Prove that $\lambda = 0$ is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$ if and only if $\mathbf{A}$ is singular.

32. In this problem we show that the eigenvalues of a Hermitian matrix $\mathbf{A}$ are real. Let $\mathbf{x}$ be an eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue λ.
    (a) Show that $(\mathbf{Ax}, \mathbf{x}) = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{Ax})$. *Hint:* See Problem 26(c).
    (b) Show that $\lambda(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x}) = \overline{\lambda}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{x})$. *Hint:* Recall that $\mathbf{Ax} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$.
    (c) Show that $\lambda = \overline{\lambda}$; that is, the eigenvalue λ is real.

33. Show that if λ_1 and λ_2 are eigenvalues of a Hermitian matrix $\mathbf{A}$, and if $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, then the corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are orthogonal.
    Hint: Use the results of Problems 26(c) and 32 to show that $(\lambda_1 - \lambda_2)(\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}) = 0$.

34. Show that if λ_1 and λ_2 are eigenvalues of any matrix $\mathbf{A}$, and if $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, then the corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent.
    Hint: Start from $c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \mathbf{0}$; multiply by $\mathbf{A}$ to obtain $c_1\lambda_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)} + c_2\lambda_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = \mathbf{0}$. Then show that $c_1 = c_2 = 0$.

7.4 Basic Theory of Systems of First Order Linear Equations

The general theory of a system of n first order linear equations

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= p_{11}(t)x_1 + \cdots + p_{1n}(t)x_n + g_1(t), \\ &\vdots \\ x_n' &= p_{n1}(t)x_1 + \cdots + p_{nn}(t)x_n + g_n(t) \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

closely parallels that of a single linear equation of nth order. The discussion in this section therefore follows the same general lines as that in Sections 3.2 and 4.1. To discuss the system (1) most effectively, we write it in matrix notation. That is, we consider $x_1 = \phi_1(t), \ldots, x_n = \phi_n(t)$ to be components of a vector $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\phi}(t)$; similarly, $g_1(t), \ldots, g_n(t)$ are components of a vector $\mathbf{g}(t)$, and $p_{11}(t), \ldots, p_{nn}(t)$ are elements of an $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{P}(t)$. Equation (1) then takes the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t). \tag{2}$$

The use of vectors and matrices not only saves a great deal of space and facilitates calculations but also emphasizes the similarity between systems of equations and single (scalar) equations.

A vector $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\phi}(t)$ is said to be a solution of Eq. (2) if its components satisfy the system of equations (1). Throughout this section we assume that $\mathbf{P}$ and $\mathbf{g}$ are continuous on some interval $\alpha < t < \beta$; that is, each of the scalar functions $p_{11}, \ldots, p_{nn}, g_1, \ldots, g_n$ is continuous there. According to Theorem 7.1.2, this is sufficient to guarantee the existence of solutions of Eq. (2) on the interval $\alpha < t < \beta$.

It is convenient to consider first the homogeneous equation

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} \tag{3}$$

obtained from Eq. (2) by setting $\mathbf{g}(t) = \mathbf{0}$. Once the homogeneous equation has been solved, there are several methods that can be used to solve the nonhomogeneous

(a) Show that any solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{z}(t)$ can be written in the form

$$\mathbf{z}(t) = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$$

for suitable constants $c_1, \ldots, c_n$.
Hint: Use the result of Problem 12 of Section 7.3, and also Problem 8 above.

(b) Show that the expression for the solution $\mathbf{z}(t)$ in part (a) is unique; that is, if $\mathbf{z}(t) = k_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + k_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$, then $k_1 = c_1, \ldots, k_n = c_n$.
Hint: Show that $(k_1 - c_1)\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + (k_n - c_n)\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) = \mathbf{0}$ for each t in $\alpha < t < \beta$, and use the linear independence of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$.

7.5 Homogeneous Linear Systems with Constant Coefficients

We will concentrate most of our attention on systems of homogeneous linear equations with constant coefficients—that is, systems of the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{1}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant $n \times n$ matrix. Unless stated otherwise, we will assume further that all the elements of $\mathbf{A}$ are real (rather than complex) numbers.

If $n = 1$, then the system reduces to a single first order equation

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = ax, \tag{2}$$

whose solution is $x = ce^{at}$. Note that $x = 0$ is the only equilibrium solution if $a \neq 0$. If $a < 0$, then other solutions approach $x = 0$ as t increases, and in this case we say that $x = 0$ is an asymptotically stable equilibrium solution. On the other hand, if $a > 0$, then $x = 0$ is unstable, since other solutions depart from it with increasing t. For systems of n equations, the situation is similar but more complicated. Equilibrium solutions are found by solving $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. We usually assume that $\det\mathbf{A} \neq 0$, so $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is the only equilibrium solution. An important question is whether other solutions approach this equilibrium solution or depart from it as t increases; in other words, is $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ asymptotically stable or unstable? Or are there still other possibilities?

The case $n = 2$ is particularly important and lends itself to visualization in the x_1x_2-plane, called the **phase plane**. By evaluating $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ at a large number of points and plotting the resulting vectors, we obtain a direction field of tangent vectors to solutions of the system of differential equations. A qualitative understanding of the behavior of solutions can usually be gained from a direction field. More precise information results from including in the plot some solution curves, or trajectories. A plot that shows a representative sample of trajectories for a given system is called a **phase portrait**. A well-constructed phase portrait provides easily understood information about all solutions of a two-dimensional system in a single graphical display. Although creating quantitatively accurate phase portraits requires computer assistance, it is usually possible to sketch qualitatively accurate phase portraits by hand, as we demonstrate in Examples 2 and 3 below.

Our first task, however, is to show how to find solutions of systems such as Eq. (1). We start with a particularly simple example.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the general solution of the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{3}$$

The most important feature of this system is that the coefficient matrix is a diagonal matrix. Thus, by writing the system in scalar form, we obtain

$$x_1' = 2x_1, \qquad x_2' = -3x_2.$$

Each of these equations involves only one of the unknown variables, so we can solve the two equations separately. In this way we find that

$$x_1 = c_1 e^{2t}, \qquad x_2 = c_2 e^{-3t},$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants. Then, by writing the solution in vector form, we have

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} c_1 e^{2t} \\ c_2 e^{-3t} \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} e^{2t} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ e^{-3t} \end{pmatrix} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-3t}. \tag{4}$$

Now we define the two solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ so that

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-3t}, \tag{5}$$

The Wronskian of these solutions is

$$W[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}](t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{2t} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-3t} \end{vmatrix} = e^{-t}, \tag{6}$$

which is never zero. Therefore, $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ form a fundamental set of solutions, and the general solution of Eq. (3) is given by Eq. (4).

In Example 1 we found two independent solutions of the given system (3) in the form of an exponential function multiplied by a vector. This was perhaps to be expected since we have found other linear equations with constant coefficients to have exponential solutions, and the unknown $\mathbf{x}$ in the system (3) is a vector. So let us try to extend this idea to the general system (1) by seeking solutions of the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}, \tag{7}$$

where the exponent r and the vector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ are to be determined. Substituting from Eq. (7) for $\mathbf{x}$ in the system (1) gives

$$r\boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt} = \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}.$$

Upon canceling the nonzero scalar factor e^{rt}, we obtain $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi} = r\boldsymbol{\xi}$, or

$$(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}, \tag{8}$$

where $\mathbf{I}$ is the $n \times n$ identity matrix. Thus, to solve the system of differential equations (1), we must solve the system of algebraic equations (8). This latter problem is precisely the one that determines the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$.

Therefore, the vector $\mathbf{x}$ given by Eq. (7) is a solution of Eq. (1), provided that r is an eigenvalue and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ an associated eigenvector of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$.

The following two examples are typical of 2×2 systems with eigenvalues that are real and different. In each example we will solve the system and construct a corresponding phase portrait. We will see that solutions have very distinct geometrical patterns depending on whether the eigenvalues have the same sign or different signs. Later in the section we return to a further discussion of the general $n \times n$ system.

EXAMPLE 2

Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{9}$$

Plot a direction field and determine the qualitative behavior of solutions. Then find the general solution and draw a phase portrait showing several trajectories.

A direction field for this system is shown in Figure 7.5.1. By following the arrows in this figure, you can see that a typical solution in the second quadrant eventually moves into the first or third quadrant, and likewise for a typical solution in the fourth quadrant. On the other hand, no solution leaves either the first or the third quadrant. Further, it appears that a typical solution departs from the neighborhood of the origin and ultimately has a slope of approximately 2.

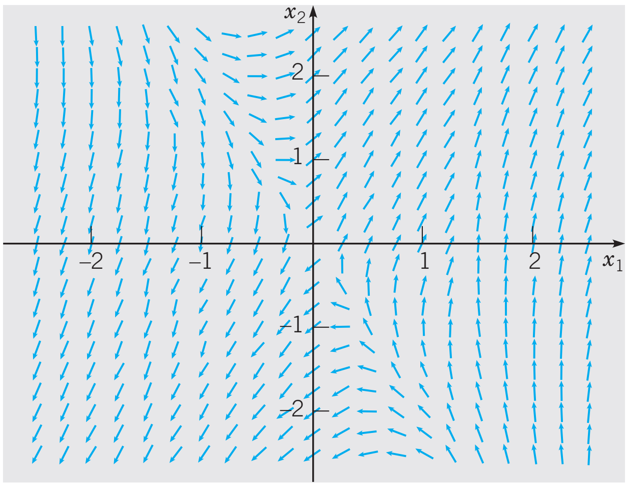


FIGURE 7.5.1 Direction field for the system (9).

To find solutions explicitly, we assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$ and substitute for $\mathbf{x}$ in Eq. (9). We are led to the system of algebraic equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1-r & 1 \\ 4 & 1-r \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{10}$$

Equations (10) have a nontrivial solution if and only if the determinant of coefficients is zero. Thus, allowable values of r are found from the equation

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1-r & 1 \\ 4 & 1-r \end{vmatrix} = (1-r)^2 - 4$$

$$= r^2 - 2r - 3 = (r-3)(r+1) = 0. \tag{11}$$

Equation (11) has the roots $r_1 = 3$ and $r_2 = -1$; these are the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix in Eq. (9). If $r = 3$, then the system (10) reduces to the single equation

$$-2\xi_1 + \xi_2 = 0. \tag{12}$$

Thus $\xi_2 = 2\xi_1$, and the eigenvector corresponding to $r_1 = 3$ can be taken as

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{13}$$

Similarly, corresponding to $r_2 = -1$, we find that $\xi_2 = -2\xi_1$, so the eigenvector is

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{14}$$

The corresponding solutions of the differential equation are

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{3t}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}. \tag{15}$$

The Wronskian of these solutions is

$$W[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}](t) = \begin{vmatrix} e^{3t} & e^{-t} \\ 2e^{3t} & -2e^{-t} \end{vmatrix} = -4e^{2t}, \tag{16}$$

which is never zero. Hence the solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ form a fundamental set, and the general solution of the system (9) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$$

$$= c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{3t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}, \tag{17}$$

where c_1 and c_2 are arbitrary constants.

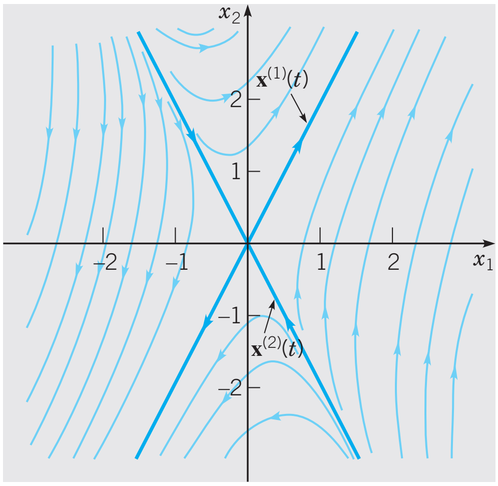
To visualize the solution (17), it is helpful to consider its graph in the x_1x_2-plane for various values of the constants c_1 and c_2. We start with $\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ or, in scalar form,

$$x_1 = c_1e^{3t}, \qquad x_2 = 2c_1e^{3t}.$$

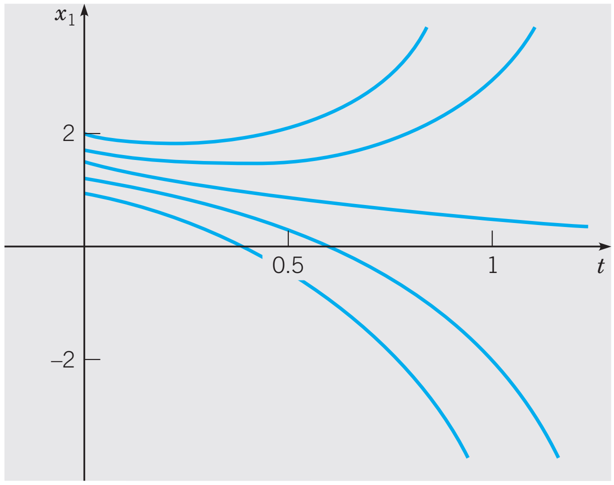
By eliminating t between these two equations, we see that this solution lies on the straight line $x_2 = 2x_1$; see Figure 7.5.2*a*. This is the line through the origin in the direction of the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. If we look on the solution as the trajectory of a moving particle, then the particle is in the first quadrant when $c_1 > 0$ and in the third quadrant when $c_1 < 0$. In either case the particle departs from the origin as t increases. Next consider $\mathbf{x} = c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$, or

$$x_1 = c_2e^{-t}, \qquad x_2 = -2c_2e^{-t}.$$

This solution lies on the line $x_2 = -2x_1$, whose direction is determined by the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$. The solution is in the fourth quadrant when $c_2 > 0$ and in the second quadrant when $c_2 < 0$, as shown in Figure 7.5.2*a*. In both cases the particle moves toward the origin as t increases. The solution (17) is a combination of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$. For large t the term $c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ is dominant and the term $c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ becomes negligible. Thus all solutions for which $c_1 \neq 0$ are asymptotic to the line $x_2 = 2x_1$ as $t \to \infty$. Similarly, all solutions for which $c_2 \neq 0$ are asymptotic to the line $x_2 = -2x_1$ as $t \to -\infty$. A phase portrait for the system including the graphs of several solutions is shown in Figure 7.5.2*a*. The pattern of trajectories in this figure is typical of all 2×2 systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ for which the eigenvalues are real and of opposite signs. The origin is called a **saddle point** in this case. Saddle points are always unstable because almost all trajectories depart from them as t increases.



(*a*)



(*b*)

FIGURE 7.5.2 (*a*) A phase portrait for the system (9); the origin is a saddle point. (*b*) Typical plots of x_1 versus t for the system (9).

In the preceding paragraph, we have described how to draw by hand a qualitatively correct sketch of the trajectories of a system such as Eq. (9), once the eigenvalues and eigenvectors have been determined. However, to produce a detailed and accurate drawing, such as Figure 7.5.2*a* and other figures that appear later in this chapter, a computer is extremely helpful, if not indispensable.

As an alternative to Figure 7.5.2*a*, you can also plot x_1 or x_2 as a function of t; some typical plots of x_1 versus t are shown in Figure 7.5.2*b*, and those of x_2 versus t are similar. For certain initial conditions it follows that $c_1 = 0$ in Eq. (17), so that $x_1 = c_2e^{-t}$ and $x_1 \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$. One such graph is shown in Figure 7.5.2*b*, corresponding to a trajectory that approaches the origin in Figure 7.5.2*a*. For most initial conditions, however, $c_1 \neq 0$ and x_1 is given by $x_1 = c_1e^{3t} + c_2e^{-t}$. Then the presence of the positive exponential term causes x_1 to grow exponentially in magnitude as t increases. Several graphs of this type are shown in Figure 7.5.2*b*, corresponding to trajectories that depart from the neighborhood of the origin in Figure 7.5.2*a*. It is important to understand the relation between parts (*a*) and (*b*) of Figure 7.5.2 and other similar figures that appear later, since you may want to visualize solutions either in the x_1x_2-plane or as functions of the independent variable t.

EXAMPLE 3

Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & \sqrt{2} \\ \sqrt{2} & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{18}$$

Draw a direction field for this system and find its general solution. Then plot a phase portrait showing several typical trajectories in the phase plane.

The direction field for the system (18) in Figure 7.5.3 shows clearly that all solutions approach the origin. To find the solutions, we assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$; then we obtain the algebraic system

$$\begin{pmatrix} -3-r & \sqrt{2} \\ \sqrt{2} & -2-r \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{19}$$

The eigenvalues satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} (-3-r)(-2-r) - 2 &= r^2 + 5r + 4 \\ &= (r+1)(r+4) = 0, \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

so $r_1 = -1$ and $r_2 = -4$. For $r = -1$, Eq. (19) becomes

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2 & \sqrt{2} \\ \sqrt{2} & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{21}$$

Hence $\xi_2 = \sqrt{2}\,\xi_1$, and the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue $r_1 = -1$ can be taken as

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{22}$$

Similarly, corresponding to the eigenvalue $r_2 = -4$ we have $\xi_1 = -\sqrt{2}\,\xi_2$, so the eigenvector is

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{23}$$

Thus a fundamental set of solutions of the system (18) is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-4t}, \tag{24}$$

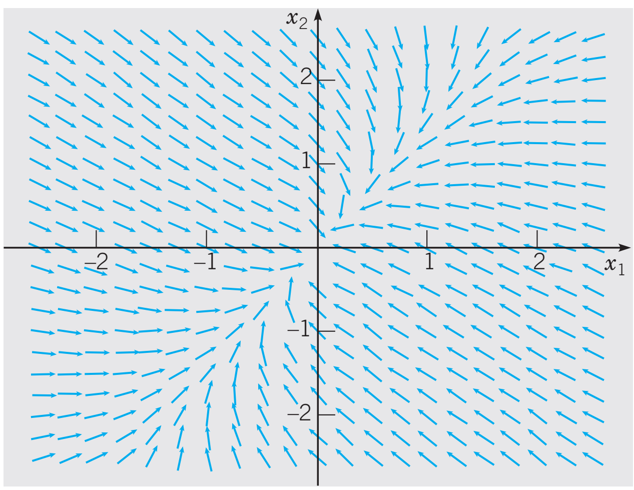


FIGURE 7.5.3 Direction field for the system (18).

and the general solution is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)} = c_1\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + c_2\begin{pmatrix} -\sqrt{2} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-4t}. \tag{25}$$

A phase portrait for the system (18) is constructed by drawing graphs of the solution (25) for several values of c_1 and c_2, as shown in Figure 7.5.4*a*. The solution $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ approaches the origin along the line $x_2 = \sqrt{2}\,x_1$, and the solution $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ approaches the origin along the line $x_1 = -\sqrt{2}\,x_2$. The directions of these lines are determined by the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$, respectively. In general, we have a combination of these two fundamental solutions. As $t \to \infty$, the solution $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ is negligible compared to $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$. Thus, unless $c_1 = 0$, the solution (25) approaches the origin tangent to the line $x_2 = \sqrt{2}x_1$. The pattern of trajectories shown in Figure 7.5.4*a* is typical of all 2×2 systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ for which the eigenvalues are real, different, and of the same sign. The origin is called a **node** for such a system. If the eigenvalues were positive rather than negative, then the trajectories would be similar but traversed in the outward direction. Nodes are asymptotically stable if the eigenvalues are negative and unstable if the eigenvalues are positive.

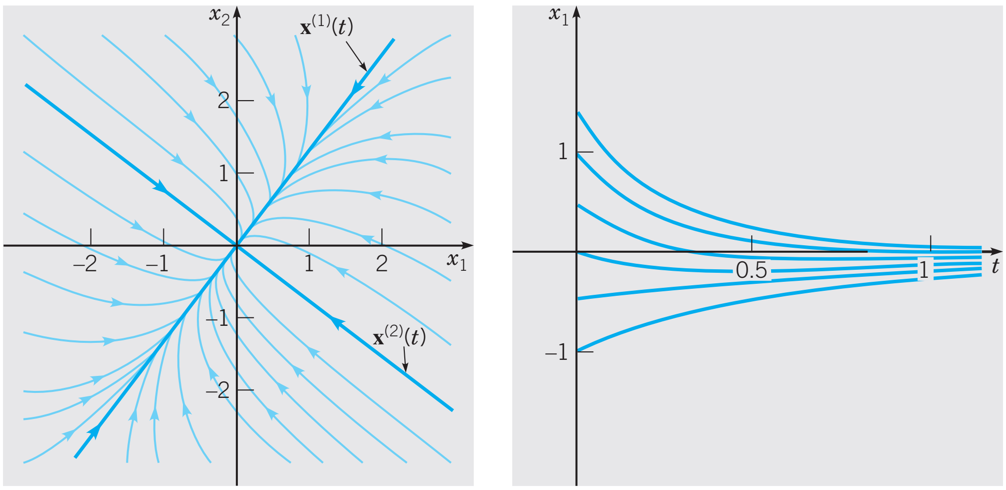


FIGURE 7.5.4 (*a*) A phase portrait for the system (18); the origin is an asynptotically stable node. (*b*) Typical plots of x_1 versus t for the system (18).

Although Figure 7.5.4*a* was computer-generated, a qualitatively correct sketch of the trajectories can be drawn quickly by hand on the basis of a knowledge of the eigenvalues and eigenvectors.

Some typical plots of x_1 versus t are shown in Figure 7.5.4*b*. Observe that each of the graphs approaches the t-axis asymptotically as t increases, corresponding to a trajectory that approaches the origin in Figure 7.5.2*a*. The behavior of x_2 as a function of t is similar.

Examples 2 and 3 illustrate the two main cases for 2×2 systems having eigenvalues that are real and different. The eigenvalues have either opposite signs (Example 2) or the same sign (Example 3). The other possibility is that zero is an eigenvalue, but in this case it follows that $\det \mathbf{A} = 0$, which violates the assumption made at the beginning of this section. However, see Problems 7 and 8.

Returning to the general system (1), we proceed as in the examples. To find solutions of the differential equation (1), we must find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ from the associated algebraic system (8). The eigenvalues $r_1, \dots, r_n$ (which need not all be different) are roots of the nth degree polynomial equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0. \tag{26}$$

The nature of the eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenvectors determines the nature of the general solution of the system (1). If we assume that $\mathbf{A}$ is a real-valued matrix, then we must consider the following possibilities for the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$:

1. All eigenvalues are real and different from each other.
2. Some eigenvalues occur in complex conjugate pairs.
3. Some eigenvalues, either real or complex, are repeated.

If the n eigenvalues are all real and different, as in the three preceding examples, then associated with each eigenvalue r_i is a real eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}$, and the n eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ are linearly independent. The corresponding solutions of the differential system (1) are

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{r_1 t}, \quad \dots, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)} e^{r_n t}. \tag{27}$$

To show that these solutions form a fundamental set, we evaluate their Wronskian:

$$\begin{aligned} W[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}](t) &= \begin{vmatrix} \xi_1^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} & \cdots & \xi_1^{(n)} e^{r_n t} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \xi_n^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} & \cdots & \xi_n^{(n)} e^{r_n t} \end{vmatrix} \\ &= e^{(r_1 + \cdots + r_n)t} \begin{vmatrix} \xi_1^{(1)} & \cdots & \xi_1^{(n)} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \xi_n^{(1)} & \cdots & \xi_n^{(n)} \end{vmatrix}. \end{aligned} \tag{28}$$

First, we observe that the exponential function is never zero. Next, since the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ are linearly independent, the determinant in the last term of Eq. (28) is nonzero. As a consequence, the Wronskian $W[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}](t)$ is never zero; hence $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}$ form a fundamental set of solutions. Thus the general solution of Eq. (1) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1 \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} + \cdots + c_n \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)} e^{r_n t}. \tag{29}$$

If $\mathbf{A}$ is real and symmetric (a special case of Hermitian matrices), recall from Section 7.3 that all the eigenvalues $r_1, \dots, r_n$ must be real. Further, even if some of the eigenvalues are repeated, there is always a full set of n eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ that are linearly independent (in fact, orthogonal). Hence the corresponding solutions of the differential system (1) given by Eq. (27) again form a fundamental set of solutions, and the general solution is again given by Eq. (29). The following example illustrates this case.

EXAMPLE 4

Find the general solution of

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{30}$$

Observe that the coefficient matrix is real and symmetric. The eigenvalues and eigenvectors of this matrix were found in Example 5 of Section 7.3:

$$r_1 = 2, \qquad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}; \tag{31}$$

$$r_2 = -1, \qquad r_3 = -1; \qquad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{32}$$

Hence a fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (30) is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}, \tag{33}$$

and the general solution is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t} + c_3 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t}. \tag{34}$$

This example illustrates the fact that even though an eigenvalue ($r = -1$) has algebraic multiplicity 2, it may still be possible to find two linearly independent eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)}$ and, as a consequence, to construct the general solution (34).

The behavior of the solution (34) depends critically on the initial conditions. For large t the first term on the right side of Eq. (34) is the dominant one; therefore, if $c_1 \neq 0$, all components of $\mathbf{x}$ become unbounded as $t \to \infty$. On the other hand, for certain initial points c_1 will be zero. In this case, the solution involves only the negative exponential terms, and $\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{0}$ as $t \to \infty$. The initial points that cause c_1 to be zero are precisely those that lie in the plane determined by the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)}$ corresponding to the two negative eigenvalues. Thus solutions that start in this plane approach the origin as $t \to \infty$, while all other solutions become unbounded.

If some of the eigenvalues occur in complex conjugate pairs, then there are still n linearly independent solutions of the form (27), provided that all the eigenvalues are different. Of course, the solutions arising from complex eigenvalues are complex-valued. However, as in Section 3.3, it is possible to obtain a full set of real-valued solutions. This is discussed in Section 7.6.

More serious difficulties can occur if an eigenvalue is repeated. In this event the number of corresponding linearly independent eigenvectors may be smaller than the algebraic multiplicity of the eigenvalue. If so, the number of linearly independent solutions of the form $\boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$ will be smaller than n. To construct a fundamental set of solutions, it is then necessary to seek additional solutions of another form. The situation is somewhat analogous to that for an nth order linear equation with constant coefficients; a repeated root of the characteristic equation gave rise to solutions of the form $e^{rt}, te^{rt}, t^2e^{rt}, \ldots$. The case of repeated eigenvalues is treated in Section 7.8.

Finally, if $\mathbf{A}$ is complex, then complex eigenvalues need not occur in conjugate pairs, and the eigenvectors are normally complex-valued even though the associated eigenvalue may be real. The solutions of the differential equation (1) are still of the form (27), provided that there are n linearly independent eigenvectors, but in general all the solutions are complex-valued.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 6:

(a) Find the general solution of the given system of equations and describe the behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$.

(b) Draw a direction field and plot a few trajectories of the system.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 3 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{5}{4} & \frac{3}{4} \\ \frac{3}{4} & \frac{5}{4} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 7 and 8:

(a) Find the general solution of the given system of equations.

(b) Draw a direction field and a few of the trajectories. In each of these problems, the coefficient matrix has a zero eigenvalue. As a result, the pattern of trajectories is different from those in the examples in the text.

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ 8 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ -1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 9 through 14, find the general solution of the given system of equations.

9. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ -i & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

10. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2+i \\ -1 & -1-i \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

11. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

12. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 2 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 2 \\ 4 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

13. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -8 & -5 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

14. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 15 through 18, solve the given initial value problem. Describe the behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$.

15. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

16. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ -5 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$

17. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

18. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 5 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$

19. The system $t\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ is analogous to the second order Euler equation (Section 5.4). Assuming that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} t^r$, where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is a constant vector, show that $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and r must satisfy $(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}$ in order to obtain nontrivial solutions of the given differential equation.

Referring to Problem 19, solve the given system of equations in each of Problems 20 through 23. Assume that $t > 0$.

20. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

21. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

22. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ 8 & -6 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

23. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 24 through 27, the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a matrix $\mathbf{A}$ are given. Consider the corresponding system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$.

(a) Sketch a phase portrait of the system.

(b) Sketch the trajectory passing through the initial point $(2, 3)$.

(c) For the trajectory in part (b), sketch the graphs of x_1 versus t and of x_2 versus t on the same set of axes.

24. $r_1 = -1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \qquad r_2 = -2, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

25. $r_1 = 1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \qquad r_2 = -2, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

26. $r_1 = -1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \qquad r_2 = 2, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

27. $r_1 = 1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \qquad r_2 = 2, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

28. Consider a 2×2 system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$. If we assume that $r_1 \neq r_2$, the general solution is $\mathbf{x} = c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{r_1 t} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}e^{r_2 t}$, provided that $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent. In this problem we establish the linear independence of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ by assuming that they are linearly dependent and then showing that this leads to a contradiction.

    (a) Note that $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ satisfies the matrix equation $(\mathbf{A} - r_1\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{0}$; similarly, note that $(\mathbf{A} - r_2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \mathbf{0}$.

    (b) Show that $(\mathbf{A} - r_2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = (r_1 - r_2)\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$.

    (c) Suppose that $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are linearly dependent. Then $c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \mathbf{0}$ and at least one of c_1 and c_2 (say c_1) is not zero. Show that $(\mathbf{A} - r_2\mathbf{I})(c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}) = \mathbf{0}$, and also show that $(\mathbf{A} - r_2\mathbf{I})(c_1\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} + c_2\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}) = c_1(r_1 - r_2)\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. Hence $c_1 = 0$, which is a contradiction. Therefore, $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent.

    (d) Modify the argument of part (c) if we assume that $c_2 \neq 0$.

    (e) Carry out a similar argument for the case in which the order n is equal to 3; note that the procedure can be extended to an arbitrary value of n.

29. Consider the equation

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0, \tag{i}$$

    where a, b, and c are constants with $a \neq 0$. In Chapter 3 it was shown that the general solution depended on the roots of the characteristic equation

$$ar^2 + br + c = 0. \tag{ii}$$

    (a) Transform Eq. (i) into a system of first order equations by letting $x_1 = y, x_2 = y'$. Find the system of equations $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ satisfied by $\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix}$.

(b) Find the equation that determines the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix **A** in part (a). Note that this equation is just the characteristic equation (ii) of Eq. (i).

30. The two-tank system of Problem 22 in Section 7.1 leads to the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{10} & \frac{3}{40} \\ \frac{1}{10} & -\frac{1}{5} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} -17 \\ -21 \end{pmatrix},$$

where x_1 and x_2 are the deviations of the salt levels Q_1 and Q_2 from their respective equilibria.

(a) Find the solution of the given initial value problem.

(b) Plot x_1 versus t and x_2 versus t on the same set of axes.

(c) Find the smallest time T such that $|x_1(t)| \leq 0.5$ and $|x_2(t)| \leq 0.5$ for all $t \geq T$.

31. Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ -\alpha & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}.$$

(a) Solve the system for $\alpha = 0.5$. What are the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix? Classify the equilibrium point at the origin as to type.

(b) Solve the system for $\alpha = 2$. What are the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix? Classify the equilibrium point at the origin as to type.

(c) In parts (a) and (b), solutions of the system exhibit two quite different types of behavior. Find the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix in terms of α, and determine the value of α between 0.5 and 2 where the transition from one type of behavior to the other occurs.

Electric Circuits. Problems 32 and 33 are concerned with the electric circuit described by the system of differential equations in Problem 21 of Section 7.1:

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\dfrac{R_1}{L} & -\dfrac{1}{L} \\ \dfrac{1}{C} & -\dfrac{1}{CR_2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}. \tag{i}$$

32. (a) Find the general solution of Eq. (i) if $R_1 = 1\ \Omega$, $R_2 = \frac{3}{5}\ \Omega$, $L = 2$ H, and $C = \frac{2}{3}$ F.

(b) Show that $I(t) \to 0$ and $V(t) \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$, regardless of the initial values $I(0)$ and $V(0)$.

33. Consider the preceding system of differential equations (i).

(a) Find a condition on R_1, R_2, C, and L that must be satisfied if the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix are to be real and different.

(b) If the condition found in part (a) is satisfied, show that both eigenvalues are negative. Then show that $I(t) \to 0$ and $V(t) \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$, regardless of the initial conditions.

(c) If the condition found in part (a) is not satisfied, then the eigenvalues are either complex or repeated. Do you think that $I(t) \to 0$ and $V(t) \to 0$ as $t \to \infty$ in these cases as well?

Hint: In part (c), one approach is to change the system (i) into a single second order equation. We also discuss complex and repeated eigenvalues in Sections 7.6 and 7.8.

7.6 Complex Eigenvalues

In this section we consider again a system of n linear homogeneous equations with constant coefficients

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{1}$$

where the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is real-valued. If we seek solutions of the form $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$, then it follows, as in Section 7.5, that r must be an eigenvalue and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ a corresponding eigenvector of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$. Recall that the eigenvalues $r_1, \dots, r_n$ of $\mathbf{A}$ are the roots of the characteristic equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0 \tag{2}$$

and that the corresponding eigenvectors satisfy

$$(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{3}$$

If $\mathbf{A}$ is real, then the coefficients in the polynomial equation (2) for r are real, and any complex eigenvalues must occur in conjugate pairs. For example, if $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$, where λ and μ are real, is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$, then so is $r_2 = \lambda - i\mu$. To explore the effect of complex eigenvalues, we begin with an example.

EXAMPLE 1

Find a fundamental set of real-valued solutions of the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}. \tag{4}$$

Plot a phase portrait and graphs of components of typical solutions.

A direction field for the system (4) is shown in Figure 7.6.1. This plot suggests that the trajectories in the phase plane spiral clockwise toward the origin.

To find a fundamental set of solutions, we assume that

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt} \tag{5}$$

and obtain the set of linear algebraic equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} - r & 1 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{2} - r \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{6}$$

for the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$. The characteristic equation is

$$\begin{vmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} - r & 1 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{2} - r \end{vmatrix} = r^2 + r + \tfrac{5}{4} = 0; \tag{7}$$

therefore the eigenvalues are $r_1 = -\frac{1}{2} + i$ and $r_2 = -\frac{1}{2} - i$. From Eq. (6) a straightforward calculation shows that the corresponding eigenvectors are

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -i \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8}$$

Observe that the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are also complex conjugates. Hence a fundamental set of solutions of the system (4) is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{pmatrix} e^{(-1/2+i)t}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -i \end{pmatrix} e^{(-1/2-i)t}. \tag{9}$$

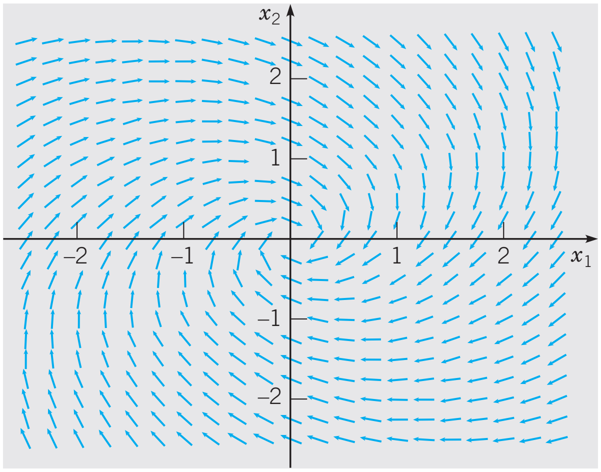


FIGURE 7.6.1 A direction field for the system (4).

To obtain a set of real-valued solutions, we can (by Theorem 7.4.5) choose the real and imaginary parts of either $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ or $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$. In fact,

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{pmatrix} e^{-t/2}(\cos t + i \sin t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t/2}\cos t \\ -e^{-t/2}\sin t \end{pmatrix} + i \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t/2}\sin t \\ e^{-t/2}\cos t \end{pmatrix}. \qquad (10)$$

Hence a set of real-valued solutions of (Eq. 4) is

$$\mathbf{u}(t) = e^{-t/2}\begin{pmatrix} \cos t \\ -\sin t \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{v}(t) = e^{-t/2}\begin{pmatrix} \sin t \\ \cos t \end{pmatrix}. \qquad (11)$$

To verify that $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are linearly independent, we compute their Wronskian:

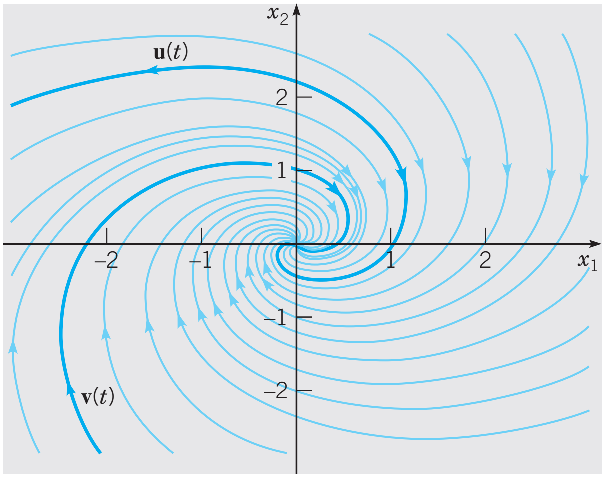
$$\begin{aligned} W(\mathbf{u},\mathbf{v})(t) &= \begin{vmatrix} e^{-t/2}\cos t & e^{-t/2}\sin t \\ -e^{-t/2}\sin t & e^{-t/2}\cos t \end{vmatrix} \\ &= e^{-t}(\cos^2 t + \sin^2 t) = e^{-t}. \end{aligned}$$

The Wronskian $W(\mathbf{u},\mathbf{v})(t)$ is never zero, so it follows that $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ constitute a fundamental set of (real-valued) solutions of the system (4).

The graphs of the solutions $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are shown in Figure 7.6.2*a*. Since

$$\mathbf{u}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{v}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

the graphs of $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ pass through the points $(1, 0)$ and $(0, 1)$, respectively. Other solutions of the system (4) are linear combinations of $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$, and graphs of a few of these solutions are also shown in Figure 7.6.2*a*; this figure is a phase portrait for the system (4). Each trajectory approaches the origin along a spiral path as $t \to \infty$, making infinitely many circuits about the origin; this is due to the fact that the solutions (11) are products of decaying exponential and sine or cosine factors. Some typical graphs of x_1 versus t are shown in Figure 7.6.2*b*; each one represents a decaying oscillation in time.



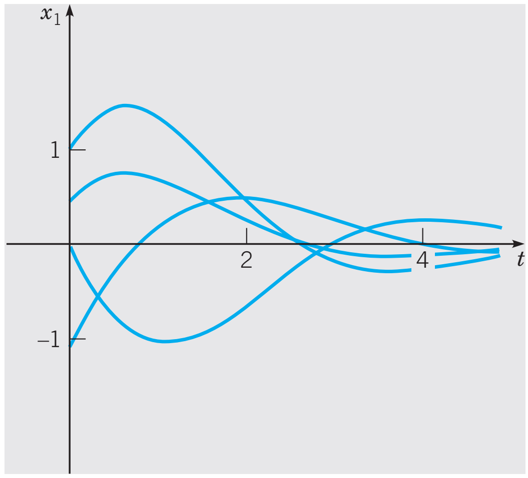


FIGURE 7.6.2 (*a*) A phase portrait for the system (4); the origin is a spiral point. (*b*) Plots of x_1 versus t for the system (4); graphs of x_2 versus t are similar.

Figure 7.6.2*a* is typical of all 2×2 systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax}$ whose eigenvalues are complex with negative real part. The origin is called a **spiral point** and is asymptotically stable because all trajectories approach it as t increases. For a system whose eigenvalues have a positive real part, the trajectories are similar to those in Figure 7.6.2*a*, but the direction of motion is away from the origin, and the trajectories become unbounded. In this case, the origin is unstable. If the real part of the eigenvalues is zero, then the trajectories neither approach the origin nor become unbounded but instead repeatedly traverse a closed curve about the origin. Examples of this behavior can be seen in Figures 7.6.3*b* and 7.6.4*b* below. In this case the origin is called a **center** and is said to be stable, but not asymptotically stable. In all three cases, the direction of motion may be either clockwise, as in this example, or counterclockwise, depending on the elements of the coefficient matrix **A**.

The phase portrait in Figure 7.6.2*a* was drawn by a computer, but it is possible to produce a useful sketch of the phase portrait by hand. We have noted that when the eigenvalues $\lambda \pm i\mu$ are complex, then the trajectories either spiral in ($\lambda < 0$), spiral out ($\lambda > 0$), or repeatedly traverse a closed curve ($\lambda = 0$). To determine whether the direction of motion is clockwise or counterclockwise, we only need to determine the direction of motion at a single convenient point. For instance, in the system (4) we might choose $\mathbf{x} = (0, 1)^T$. Then $\mathbf{Ax} = (1, -\frac{1}{2})^T$. Thus at the point $(0, 1)$ in the phase plane the tangent vector $\mathbf{x}'$ to the trajectory at that point has a positive x_1-component and therefore is directed from the second quadrant into the first. The direction of motion is therefore clockwise for the trajectories of this system.

Returning to the general equation (1)

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax},$$

we can proceed just as in the example. Suppose that there is a pair of complex conjugate eigenvalues, $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$ and $r_2 = \lambda - i\mu$. Then the corresponding eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ are also complex conjugates. To see that this is so, recall that

r_1 and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ satisfy

$$(\mathbf{A} - r_1\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{12}$$

On taking the complex conjugate of this equation and noting that $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{I}$ are real-valued, we obtain

$$(\mathbf{A} - \bar{r}_1\mathbf{I})\bar{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^{(1)} = \mathbf{0}, \tag{13}$$

where $\bar{r}_1$ and $\bar{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^{(1)}$ are the complex conjugates of r_1 and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$, respectively. In other words, $r_2 = \bar{r}_1$ is also an eigenvalue, and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \bar{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^{(1)}$ is a corresponding eigenvector. The corresponding solutions

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{r_1 t}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \bar{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^{(1)}e^{\bar{r}_1 t} \tag{14}$$

of the differential equation (1) are then complex conjugates of each other. Therefore, as in Example 1, we can find two real-valued solutions of Eq. (1) corresponding to the eigenvalues r_1 and r_2 by taking the real and imaginary parts of $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ or $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ given by Eq. (14).

Let us write $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b}$, where $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are real; then we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) &= (\mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b})e^{(\lambda+i\mu)t} \\ &= (\mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b})e^{\lambda t}(\cos\mu t + i\sin\mu t).\end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

Upon separating $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ into its real and imaginary parts, we obtain

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = e^{\lambda t}(\mathbf{a}\cos\mu t - \mathbf{b}\sin\mu t) + ie^{\lambda t}(\mathbf{a}\sin\mu t + \mathbf{b}\cos\mu t). \tag{16}$$

If we write $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \mathbf{u}(t) + i\mathbf{v}(t)$, then the vectors

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{u}(t) &= e^{\lambda t}(\mathbf{a}\cos\mu t - \mathbf{b}\sin\mu t), \\ \mathbf{v}(t) &= e^{\lambda t}(\mathbf{a}\sin\mu t + \mathbf{b}\cos\mu t)\end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

are real-valued solutions of Eq. (1). It is possible to show that $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are linearly independent solutions (see Problem 27).

For example, suppose that the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ has two complex eigenvalues $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$, $r_2 = \lambda - i\mu$, and that $r_3, \ldots, r_n$ are all real and distinct. Let the corresponding eigenvectors be $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b}$, $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \mathbf{a} - i\mathbf{b}$, $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$. Then the general solution of Eq. (1) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{u}(t) + c_2\mathbf{v}(t) + c_3\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)}e^{r_3 t} + \cdots + c_n\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}e^{r_n t}, \tag{18}$$

where $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are given by Eqs. (17). We emphasize that this analysis applies only if the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ in Eq. (1) is real, for it is only then that complex eigenvalues and eigenvectors must occur in conjugate pairs.

For 2×2 systems with real coefficients, we have now completed our description of the three main cases that can occur.

1. Eigenvalues are real and have opposite signs; $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is a saddle point.
2. Eigenvalues are real and have the same sign but are unequal; $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is a node.
3. Eigenvalues are complex with nonzero real part; $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ is a spiral point.

Other possibilities are of less importance and occur as transitions between two of the cases just listed. For example, a zero eigenvalue occurs during the transition between a saddle point and a node. Purely imaginary eigenvalues occur during a transition between asymptotically stable and unstable spiral points. Finally, real and equal eigenvalues appear during the transition between nodes and spiral points.

EXAMPLE 2

The system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & 2 \\ -2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} \tag{19}$$

contains a parameter α. Describe how the solutions depend qualitatively on α; in particular, find the critical values of α at which the qualitative behavior of the trajectories in the phase plane changes markedly.

The behavior of the trajectories is controlled by the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix. The characteristic equation is

$$r^2 - \alpha r + 4 = 0, \tag{20}$$

so the eigenvalues are

$$r = \frac{\alpha \pm \sqrt{\alpha^2 - 16}}{2}. \tag{21}$$

From Eq. (21) it follows that the eigenvalues are complex conjugates for $-4 < \alpha < 4$ and are real otherwise. Thus two critical values are $\alpha = -4$ and $\alpha = 4$, where the eigenvalues change from real to complex, or vice versa. For $\alpha < -4$ both eigenvalues are negative, so all trajectories approach the origin, which is an asymptotically stable node. For $\alpha > 4$ both eigenvalues are positive, so the origin is again a node, this time unstable; all trajectories (except $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$) become unbounded. In the intermediate range, $-4 < \alpha < 4$, the eigenvalues are complex and the trajectories are spirals. However, for $-4 < \alpha < 0$ the real part of the eigenvalues is negative, the spirals are directed inward, and the origin is asymptotically stable, whereas for $0 < \alpha < 4$ the real part of the eigenvalues is positive and the origin is unstable. Thus $\alpha = 0$ is also a critical value where the direction of the spirals changes from inward to outward. For this value of α, the origin is a center and the trajectories are closed curves about the origin, corresponding to solutions that are periodic in time. The other critical values, $\alpha = \pm 4$, yield eigenvalues that are real and equal. In this case the origin is again a node, but the phase portrait differs somewhat from those in Section 7.5. We take up this case in Section 7.8.

A Multiple Spring–Mass System. Consider the system of two masses and three springs shown in Figure 7.1.1, whose equations of motion are given by Eqs. (1) in Section 7.1. If we assume that there are no external forces, then $F_1(t) = 0, F_2(t) = 0$, and the resulting equations are

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 \frac{d^2x_1}{dt^2} &= -(k_1 + k_2)x_1 + k_2 x_2, \\ m_2 \frac{d^2x_2}{dt^2} &= k_2 x_1 - (k_2 + k_3)x_2. \end{aligned} \tag{22}$$

These equations can be solved as a system of two second order equations (see Problem 29), but, as is consistent with our approach in this chapter, we will transform them into a system of four first order equations. Let $y_1 = x_1$, $y_2 = x_2$, $y_3 = x_1'$, and $y_4 = x_2'$. Then

$$y_1' = y_3, \qquad y_2' = y_4, \tag{23}$$

and, from Eqs. (22),

$$m_1 y_3' = -(k_1 + k_2)y_1 + k_2 y_2, \qquad m_2 y_4' = k_2 y_1 - (k_2 + k_3)y_2. \tag{24}$$

The following example deals with a particular case of this two-mass, three-spring system.

EXAMPLE 3

Suppose that $m_1 = 2$, $m_2 = 9/4$, $k_1 = 1$, $k_2 = 3$, and $k_3 = 15/4$ in Eqs. (23) and (24) so that these equations become

$$y_1' = y_3, \qquad y_2' = y_4, \qquad y_3' = -2y_1 + \tfrac{3}{2}y_2, \qquad y_4' = \tfrac{4}{3}y_1 - 3y_2. \tag{25}$$

Analyze the possible motions described by Eqs. (25), and draw graphs showing typical behavior.

We can write the system (25) in matrix form as

$$\mathbf{y}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & \frac{3}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{4}{3} & -3 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{y}. \tag{26}$$

Keep in mind that y_1 and y_2 are the positions of the two masses, relative to their equilibrium positions, and that y_3 and y_4 are their velocities. We assume, as usual, that $\mathbf{y} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$, where r must be an eigenvalue of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ a corresponding eigenvector. It is possible, though a bit tedious, to find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ by hand, but it is easy with appropriate computer software. The characteristic polynomial of $\mathbf{A}$ is

$$r^4 + 5r^2 + 4 = (r^2 + 1)(r^2 + 4), \tag{27}$$

so the eigenvalues are $r_1 = i$, $r_2 = -i$, $r_3 = 2i$, and $r_4 = -2i$. The corresponding eigenvectors are

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 3i \\ 2i \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ -3i \\ -2i \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ 6i \\ -8i \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(4)} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ -6i \\ 8i \end{pmatrix}. \tag{28}$$

The complex-valued solutions $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{it}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} e^{-it}$ are complex conjugates, so two real-valued solutions can be found by finding the real and imaginary parts of either of them. For instance, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} e^{it} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 3i \\ 2i \end{pmatrix} (\cos t + i \sin t) \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 3\cos t \\ 2\cos t \\ -3\sin t \\ -2\sin t \end{pmatrix} + i \begin{pmatrix} 3\sin t \\ 2\sin t \\ 3\cos t \\ 2\cos t \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{u}^{(1)}(t) + i\mathbf{v}^{(1)}(t). \end{aligned} \tag{29}$$

In a similar way, we obtain

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(3)} e^{2it} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ 6i \\ -8i \end{pmatrix} (\cos 2t + i \sin 2t)$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 3\cos 2t \\ -4\cos 2t \\ -6\sin 2t \\ 8\sin 2t \end{pmatrix} + i \begin{pmatrix} 3\sin 2t \\ -4\sin 2t \\ 6\cos 2t \\ -8\cos 2t \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{u}^{(2)}(t) + i\mathbf{v}^{(2)}(t). \tag{30}$$

We leave it to you to verify that $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}, \mathbf{v}^{(1)}, \mathbf{u}^{(2)}$, and $\mathbf{v}^{(2)}$ are linearly independent and therefore form a fundamental set of solutions. Thus the general solution of Eq. (26) is

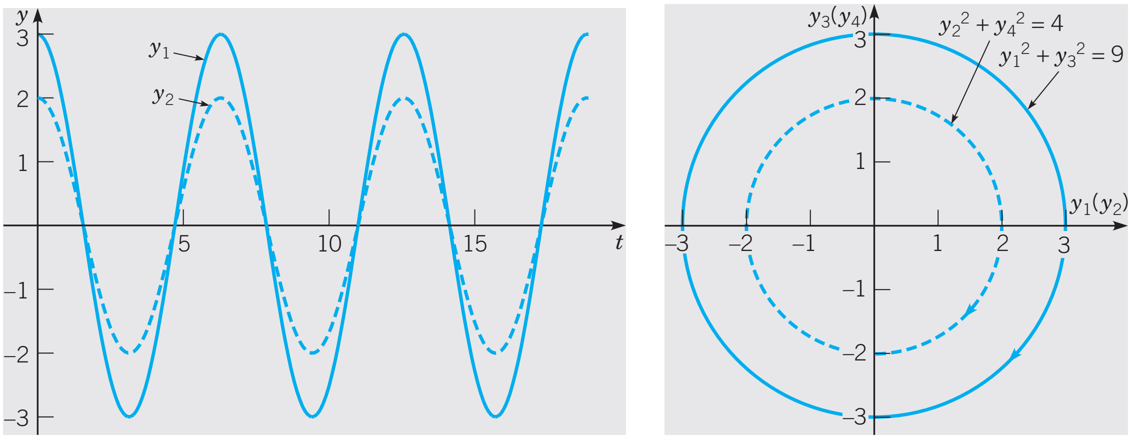
$$\mathbf{y} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 3\cos t \\ 2\cos t \\ -3\sin t \\ -2\sin t \end{pmatrix} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 3\sin t \\ 2\sin t \\ 3\cos t \\ 2\cos t \end{pmatrix} + c_3 \begin{pmatrix} 3\cos 2t \\ -4\cos 2t \\ -6\sin 2t \\ 8\sin 2t \end{pmatrix} + c_4 \begin{pmatrix} 3\sin 2t \\ -4\sin 2t \\ 6\cos 2t \\ -8\cos 2t \end{pmatrix}, \tag{31}$$

where c_1, c_2, c_3, and c_4 are arbitrary constants.

The phase space for this system is four-dimensional, and each solution, obtained by a particular set of values for $c_1, \ldots, c_4$ in Eq. (31), corresponds to a trajectory in this space. Since each solution, given by Eq. (31), is periodic with period 2π, each trajectory is a closed curve. No matter where the trajectory starts at $t = 0$, it returns to that point at $t = 2\pi$, $t = 4\pi$, and so forth, repeatedly traversing the same curve in each time interval of length 2π. We do not attempt to show any of these four-dimensional trajectories here. Instead, in the figures below we show projections of certain trajectories in the y_1y_3- or y_2y_4-plane, thereby showing the motion of each mass separately.

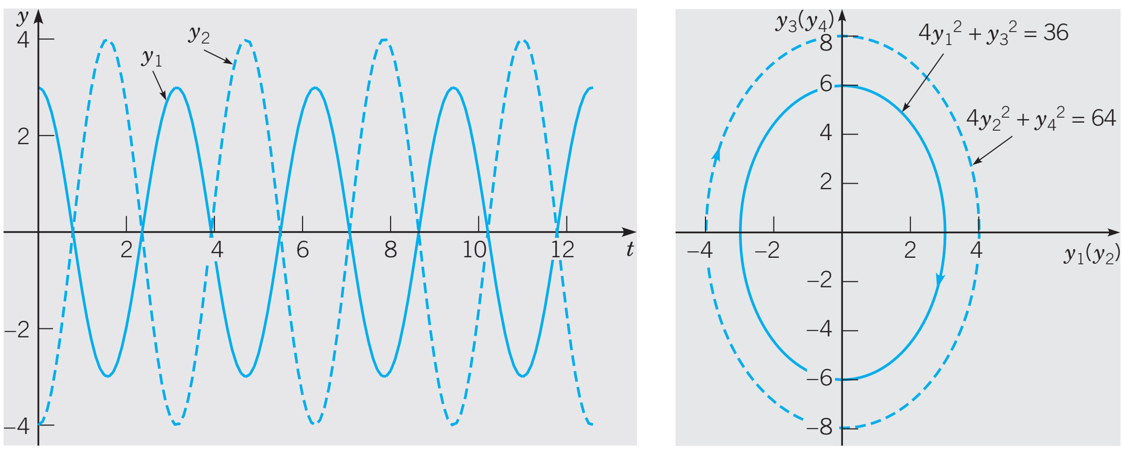
The first two terms on the right side of Eq. (31) describe motions with frequency 1 and period 2π. Note that $y_2 = (2/3)y_1$ in these terms and that $y_4 = (2/3)y_3$. This means that the two masses move back and forth together, always going in the same direction, but with the second mass moving only two-thirds as far as the first mass. If we focus on the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}(t)$ and plot y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t on the same axes, we obtain the cosine graphs of amplitude 3 and 2, respectively, shown in Figure 7.6.3*a*. The trajectory of the first mass in the y_1y_3-plane lies on the circle of radius 3 shown in Figure 7.6.3*b*, traversed clockwise starting at the point $(3, 0)$ and completing a circuit in time 2π. Also shown in this figure is the trajectory of the second mass in the y_2y_4-plane, which lies on the circle of radius 2, also traversed clockwise starting at $(2, 0)$ and also completing a circuit in time 2π. The origin is a center in the respective y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes. Similar graphs (with an appropriate shift in time) are obtained from $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}$ or from a linear combination of $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}$.

The remaining terms on the right side of Eq. (31) describe motions with frequency 2 and period π. Observe that in this case, $y_2 = -(4/3)y_1$ and $y_4 = -(4/3)y_3$. This means that the two masses are always moving in opposite directions and that the second mass moves four-thirds as far as the first mass. If we look only at $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}(t)$ and plot y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t on the same axes, we obtain Figure 7.6.4*a*. There is a phase difference of π, and the amplitude of y_2 is four-thirds that of y_1, confirming the preceding statements about the motions of the masses. Figure 7.6.4*b* shows a superposition of the trajectories for the two masses in their respective phase planes. Both graphs are ellipses, the inner one corresponding to the first mass and the outer one to the second. The trajectory on the inner ellipse starts at $(3, 0)$, and the trajectory on the outer ellipse starts at $(-4, 0)$. Both are traversed clockwise, and a circuit is completed in time π. The origin is a center in the respective y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes. Once again, similar graphs are obtained from $\mathbf{v}^{(2)}$ or from a linear combination of $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}$ and $\mathbf{v}^{(2)}$.



(*a*) (*b*)

FIGURE 7.6.3 (*a*) A plot of y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t for the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}(t)$. (*b*) Superposition of projections of trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes for the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}(t)$.



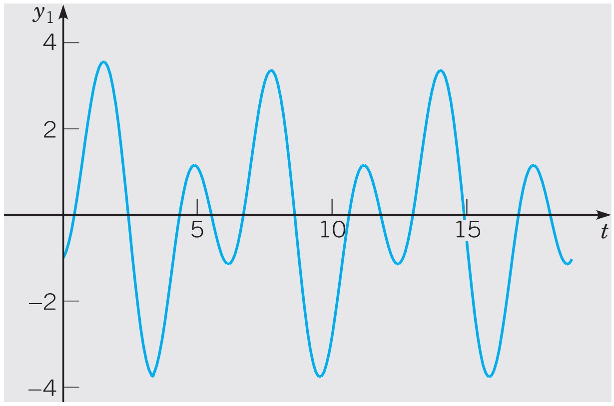
(*a*) (*b*)

FIGURE 7.6.4 (*a*) A plot of y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t for the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}(t)$. (*b*) Superposition of projections of trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes for the solution $\mathbf{u}^{(2)}(t)$.

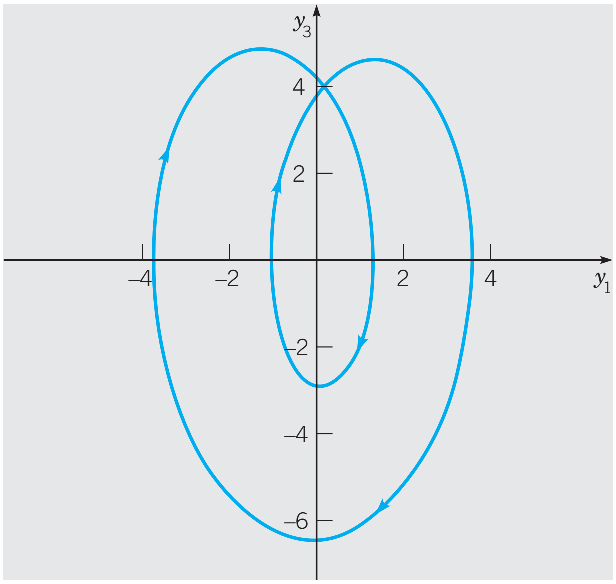
The types of motion described in the two preceding paragraphs are called **fundamental modes** of vibration for the two-mass system. Each of them results from fairly special initial conditions. For example, to obtain the fundamental mode of frequency 1, both of the constants c_3 and c_4 in Eq. (31) must be zero. This occurs only for initial conditions in which

$3y_2(0) = 2y_1(0)$ and $3y_4(0) = 2y_3(0)$. Similarly, the mode of frequency 2 is obtained only when both of the constants c_1 and c_2 in Eq. (31) are zero—that is, when the initial conditions are such that $3y_2(0) = -4y_1(0)$ and $3y_4(0) = -4y_3(0)$.

For more general initial conditions the solution is a combination of the two fundamental modes. A plot of y_1 versus t for a typical case is shown in Figure 7.6.5*a*, and the projection of the corresponding trajectory in the y_1y_3-plane is shown in Figure 7.6.5*b*. Observe that this latter figure may be a bit misleading in that it shows the projection of the trajectory crossing itself. This cannot be the case for the actual trajectory in four dimensions, because it would violate the general uniqueness theorem: there cannot be two different solutions issuing from the same initial point.



(*a*)



(*b*)

FIGURE 7.6.5 A solution of the system (25) satisfying the initial condition $\mathbf{y}(0) = (-1, 4, 1, 1)^T$. (*a*) A plot of y_1 versus t. (*b*) The projection of the trajectory in the y_1y_3-plane. As stated in the text, the actual trajectory in four dimensions does not intersect itself.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 6:

(a) Express the general solution of the given system of equations in terms of real-valued functions.

(b) Also draw a direction field, sketch a few of the trajectories, and describe the behavior of the solutions as $t \to \infty$.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -\frac{5}{2} \\ \frac{9}{5} & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -5 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 7 and 8, express the general solution of the given system of equations in terms of real-valued functions.

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & -2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 9 and 10, find the solution of the given initial value problem. Describe the behavior of the solution as $t \to \infty$.

9. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -5 \\ 1 & -3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$

10. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & 2 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

In each of Problems 11 and 12:

(a) Find the eigenvalues of the given system.

(b) Choose an initial point (other than the origin) and draw the corresponding trajectory in the x_1x_2-plane.

(c) For your trajectory in part (b), draw the graphs of x_1 versus t and of x_2 versus t.

(d) For your trajectory in part (b), draw the corresponding graph in three-dimensional tx_1x_2-space.

11. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{4} & -2 \\ 1 & -\frac{5}{4} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

12. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{4}{5} & 2 \\ -1 & \frac{6}{5} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 13 through 20, the coefficient matrix contains a parameter α. In each of these problems:

(a) Determine the eigenvalues in terms of α.

(b) Find the critical value or values of α where the qualitative nature of the phase portrait for the system changes.

(c) Draw a phase portrait for a value of α slightly below, and for another value slightly above, each critical value.

13. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & 1 \\ -1 & \alpha \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

14. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -5 \\ 1 & \alpha \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

15. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ \alpha & -2 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

16. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{5}{4} & \frac{3}{4} \\ \alpha & \frac{5}{4} \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x}$

17. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & \alpha \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

18. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & \alpha \\ -6 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

19. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & 10 \\ -1 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

20. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & \alpha \\ 8 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 21 and 22, solve the given system of equations by the method of Problem 19 of Section 7.5. Assume that $t > 0$.

21. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

22. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 23 and 24:

(a) Find the eigenvalues of the given system.

(b) Choose an initial point (other than the origin) and draw the corresponding trajectory in the x_1x_2-plane. Also draw the trajectories in the x_1x_3- and x_2x_3-planes.

(c) For the initial point in part (b), draw the corresponding trajectory in $x_1x_2x_3$-space.

23. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{4} & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

24. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{4} & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{10} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

25. Consider the electric circuit shown in Figure 7.6.6. Suppose that $R_1 = R_2 = 4\ \Omega$, $C = \frac{1}{2}$ F, and $L = 8$ H.

(a) Show that this circuit is described by the system of differential equations

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{8} \\ 2 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}, \tag{i}$$

where I is the current through the inductor and V is the voltage drop across the capacitor. *Hint:* See Problem 20 of Section 7.1.

(b) Find the general solution of Eqs. (i) in terms of real-valued functions.

(c) Find $I(t)$ and $V(t)$ if $I(0) = 2$ A and $V(0) = 3$ V.

(d) Determine the limiting values of $I(t)$ and $V(t)$ as $t \to \infty$. Do these limiting values depend on the initial conditions?

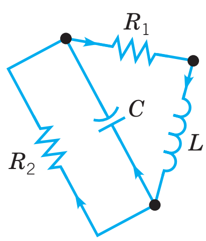


FIGURE 7.6.6 The circuit in Problem 25.

26. The electric circuit shown in Figure 7.6.7 is described by the system of differential equations

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{L} \\ -\frac{1}{C} & -\frac{1}{RC} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}, \tag{i}$$

where I is the current through the inductor and V is the voltage drop across the capacitor. These differential equations were derived in Problem 19 of Section 7.1.

(a) Show that the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix are real and different if $L > 4R^2C$; show that they are complex conjugates if $L < 4R^2C$.

(b) Suppose that $R = 1\ \Omega$, $C = \frac{1}{2}$ F, and $L = 1$ H. Find the general solution of the system (i) in this case.

(c) Find $I(t)$ and $V(t)$ if $I(0) = 2$ A and $V(0) = 1$ V.

(d) For the circuit of part (b) determine the limiting values of $I(t)$ and $V(t)$ as $t \to \infty$. Do these limiting values depend on the initial conditions?

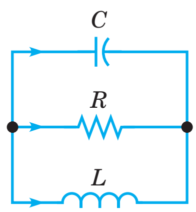


FIGURE 7.6.7 The circuit in Problem 26.

27. In this problem we indicate how to show that $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(\mathrm{t})$, as given by Eqs. (17), are linearly independent. Let $r_1 = \lambda + i\mu$ and $\bar{r}_1 = \lambda - i\mu$ be a pair of conjugate eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ of Eq. (1); let $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \mathbf{a} + i\mathbf{b}$ and $\bar{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^{(1)} = \mathbf{a} - i\mathbf{b}$ be the corresponding eigenvectors. Recall that it was stated in Section 7.3 that two different eigenvalues have linearly independent eigenvectors, so if $r_1 \neq \bar{r}_1$, then $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\bar{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^{(1)}$ are linearly independent.

(a) First we show that $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are linearly independent. Consider the equation $c_1\mathbf{a} + c_2\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$. Express $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ in terms of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\bar{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^{(1)}$, and then show that $(c_1 - ic_2)\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} + (c_1 + ic_2)\bar{\boldsymbol{\xi}}^{(1)} = \mathbf{0}$.

(b) Show that $c_1 - ic_2 = 0$ and $c_1 + ic_2 = 0$ and then that $c_1 = 0$ and $c_2 = 0$. Consequently, $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are linearly independent.

(c) To show that $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are linearly independent, consider the equation $c_1\mathbf{u}(t_0) + c_2\mathbf{v}(t_0) = \mathbf{0}$, where t_0 is an arbitrary point. Rewrite this equation in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, and then proceed as in part (b) to show that $c_1 = 0$ and $c_2 = 0$. Hence $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ are linearly independent at the arbitrary point t_0. Therefore, they are linearly independent at every point and on every interval.

28. A mass m on a spring with constant k satisfies the differential equation (see Section 3.7)

$$mu'' + ku = 0,$$

where $u(t)$ is the displacement at time t of the mass from its equilibrium position.
(a) Let $x_1 = u$, $x_2 = u'$, and show that the resulting system is

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -k/m & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}.$$

(b) Find the eigenvalues of the matrix for the system in part (a).

(c) Sketch several trajectories of the system. Choose one of your trajectories, and sketch the corresponding graphs of x_1 versus t and x_2 versus t. Sketch both graphs on one set of axes.

(d) What is the relation between the eigenvalues of the coefficient matrix and the natural frequency of the spring–mass system?

29. Consider the two-mass, three-spring system of Example 3 in the text. Instead of converting the problem into a system of four first order equations, we indicate here how to proceed directly from Eqs. (22).

(a) Show that Eqs. (22) can be written in the form

$$\mathbf{x}'' = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & \frac{3}{2} \\ \frac{4}{3} & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}. \tag{i}$$

(b) Assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$ and show that

$$(\mathbf{A} - r^2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}.$$

Note that r^2 (rather than r) is an eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$ corresponding to an eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$.

(c) Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$.

(d) Write down expressions for x_1 and x_2. There should be four arbitrary constants in these expressions.

(e) By differentiating the results from part (d), write down expressions for x_1' and x_2'. Your results from parts (d) and (e) should agree with Eq. (31) in the text.

30. Consider the two-mass, three-spring system whose equations of motion are Eqs. (22) in the text. Let $m_1 = 1, m_2 = 4/3, k_1 = 1, k_2 = 3,$ and $k_3 = 4/3$.

(a) As in the text, convert the system to four first order equations of the form $\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{y}$. Determine the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$.

(b) Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$.

(c) Write down the general solution of the system.

(d) Describe the fundamental modes of vibration. For each fundamental mode draw graphs of y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t. Also draw the corresponding trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes.

(e) Consider the initial conditions $\mathbf{y}(0) = (2, 1, 0, 0)^T$. Evaluate the arbitrary constants in the general solution in part (c). What is the period of the motion in this case? Plot graphs of y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t. Also plot the corresponding trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes. Be sure you understand how the trajectories are traversed for a full period.

(f) Consider other initial conditions of your own choice, and plot graphs similar to those requested in part (e).

31. Consider the two-mass, three-spring system whose equations of motion are Eqs. (22) in the text. Let $m_1 = m_2 = 1$ and $k_1 = k_2 = k_3 = 1$.

(a) As in the text, convert the system to four first order equations of the form $\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{y}$. Determine the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$.

(b) Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$.

(c) Write down the general solution of the system.

(d) Describe the fundamental modes of vibration. For each fundamental mode draw graphs of y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t. Also draw the corresponding trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes.

(e) Consider the initial conditions $\mathbf{y}(0) = (-1, 3, 0, 0)^T$. Evaluate the arbitrary constants in the general solution in part (c). Plot y_1 versus t and y_2 versus t. Do you think the solution is periodic? Also draw the trajectories in the y_1y_3- and y_2y_4-planes.

(f) Consider other initial conditions of your own choice, and plot graphs similar to those requested in part (e).

7.7 Fundamental Matrices

The structure of the solutions of systems of linear differential equations can be further illuminated by introducing the idea of a fundamental matrix. Suppose that $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ form a fundamental set of solutions for the equation

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} \tag{1}$$

on some interval $\alpha < t < \beta$. Then the matrix

$$\mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} x_1^{(1)}(t) & \cdots & x_1^{(n)}(t) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ x_n^{(1)}(t) & \cdots & x_n^{(n)}(t) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{2}$$

whose columns are the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$, is said to be a **fundamental matrix** for the system (1). Note that a fundamental matrix is nonsingular since its columns are linearly independent vectors.

EXAMPLE 1

Find a fundamental matrix for the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{3}$$

In Example 2 of Section 7.5, we found that

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} \\ 2e^{3t} \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{-t} \\ -2e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}$$

are linearly independent solutions of Eq. (3). Thus a fundamental matrix for the system (3) is

$$\mathbf{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} & e^{-t} \\ 2e^{3t} & -2e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4}$$

The solution of an initial value problem can be written very compactly in terms of a fundamental matrix. The general solution of Eq. (1) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) \tag{5}$$

or, in terms of $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$,

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{c}, \tag{6}$$

where $\mathbf{c}$ is a constant vector with arbitrary components $c_1, \dots, c_n$. For an initial value problem consisting of the differential equation (1) and the initial condition

$$\mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}^0, \tag{7}$$

where t_0 is a given point in $\alpha < t < \beta$ and $\mathbf{x}^0$ is a given initial vector, it is only necessary to choose the vector $\mathbf{c}$ in Eq. (6) so as to satisfy the initial condition (7). Hence $\mathbf{c}$ must satisfy

$$\mathbf{\Psi}(t_0)\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{x}^0. \tag{8}$$

Therefore, since $\mathbf{\Psi}(t_0)$ is nonsingular,

$$\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)\mathbf{x}^0 \tag{9}$$

and

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)\mathbf{x}^0 \tag{10}$$

is the solution of the initial value problem (1), (7). We emphasize, however, that to solve a given initial value problem, we would ordinarily solve Eq. (8) by row reduction and then substitute for $\mathbf{c}$ in Eq. (6), rather than compute $\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)$ and use Eq. (10).

Recall that each column of the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}$ is a solution of Eq. (1). It follows that $\mathbf{\Psi}$ satisfies the matrix differential equation

$$\mathbf{\Psi}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}. \tag{11}$$

This relation is readily confirmed by comparing the two sides of Eq. (11) column by column.

Sometimes it is convenient to make use of the special fundamental matrix, denoted by $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$, whose columns are the vectors $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t), \dots, \mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ designated in Theorem 7.4.4. Besides the differential equation (1), these vectors satisfy the initial conditions

$$\mathbf{x}^{(j)}(t_0) = \mathbf{e}^{(j)}, \tag{12}$$

where $\mathbf{e}^{(j)}$ is the unit vector, defined in Theorem 7.4.4, with a one in the jth position and zeros elsewhere. Thus $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ has the property that

$$\mathbf{\Phi}(t_0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{I}. \tag{13}$$

We will always reserve the symbol $\mathbf{\Phi}$ to denote the fundamental matrix satisfying the initial condition (13) and use $\mathbf{\Psi}$ when an arbitrary fundamental matrix is intended. In terms of $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$, the solution of the initial value problem (1), (7) is even simpler in appearance; since $\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(t_0) = \mathbf{I}$, it follows from Eq. (10) that

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{14}$$

Although the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ is often more complicated than $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$, it is especially helpful if the same system of differential equations is to be solved repeatedly subject to many different initial conditions. This corresponds to a given physical system that can be started from many different initial states. If the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ has been determined, then the solution for each set of initial conditions can be found simply by matrix multiplication, as indicated by Eq. (14). The matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ thus represents a transformation of the initial conditions $\mathbf{x}^0$ into the solution $\mathbf{x}(t)$ at an arbitrary time t. Comparing Eqs. (10) and (14) makes it clear that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)$.

EXAMPLE 2

For the system (3)

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$$

in Example 1, find the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}$ such that $\mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$.

The columns of $\mathbf{\Phi}$ are solutions of Eq. (3) that satisfy the initial conditions

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{x}^{(2)}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{15}$$

Since the general solution of Eq. (3) is

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} e^{3t} + c_2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} e^{-t},$$

we can find the solution satisfying the first set of these initial conditions by choosing $c_1 = c_2 = \frac{1}{2}$; similarly, we obtain the solution satisfying the second set of initial conditions by choosing $c_1 = \frac{1}{4}$ and $c_2 = -\frac{1}{4}$. Hence

$$\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2}e^{3t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} & \frac{1}{4}e^{3t} - \frac{1}{4}e^{-t} \\ e^{3t} - e^{-t} & \frac{1}{2}e^{3t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{16}$$

Note that the elements of $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ are more complicated than those of the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ given by Eq. (4); however, it is now easy to determine the solution corresponding to any set of initial conditions.

***The Matrix* exp(A*t*).** Recall that the solution of the scalar initial value problem

$$x' = ax, \qquad x(0) = x_0, \tag{17}$$

where a is a constant, is

$$x = x_0 \exp(at). \tag{18}$$

Now consider the corresponding initial value problem for an $n \times n$ system, namely,

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0, \tag{19}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant matrix. Applying the results of this section to the problem (19), we can write its solution as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{x}^0, \tag{20}$$

where $\mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$. Comparing the problems (17) and (19), and their solutions, suggests that the matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ might have an exponential character. We now explore this possibility.

The scalar exponential function $\exp(at)$ can be represented by the power series

$$\exp(at) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a^n t^n}{n!}, \tag{21}$$

which converges for all t. Let us now replace the scalar a by the $n \times n$ constant matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and consider the corresponding series

$$\mathbf{I} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^n}{n!} = \mathbf{I} + \mathbf{A}t + \frac{\mathbf{A}^2 t^2}{2!} + \cdots + \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^n}{n!} + \cdots. \tag{22}$$

Each term in the series (22) is an $n \times n$ matrix. It is possible to show that each element of this matrix sum converges for all t as $n \to \infty$. Thus the series (22) defines as its sum a new matrix, which we denote by $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$; that is,

$$\exp(\mathbf{A}t) = \mathbf{I} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^n}{n!}, \tag{23}$$

analogous to the expansion (21) of the scalar function $\exp(at)$.

By differentiating the series (23) term by term, we obtain

$$\frac{d}{dt}[\exp(\mathbf{A}t)] = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^{n-1}}{(n-1)!} = \mathbf{A}\left[\mathbf{I} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mathbf{A}^n t^n}{n!}\right] = \mathbf{A}\exp(\mathbf{A}t). \tag{24}$$

Therefore, $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{d}{dt}\exp(\mathbf{A}t) = \mathbf{A}\exp(\mathbf{A}t). \tag{25}$$

Further, by setting $t = 0$ in Eq. (23) we find that $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ satisfies the initial condition

$$\exp(\mathbf{A}t)\Big|_{t=0} = \mathbf{I}. \tag{26}$$

The fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}$ satisfies the same initial value problem as $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$, namely,

$$\mathbf{\Phi}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{\Phi}, \qquad \mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}. \tag{27}$$

Then, by the uniqueness part of Theorem 7.1.2 (extended to matrix differential equations), we conclude that $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ and the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ are the same. Thus we can write the solution of the initial value problem (19) in the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \exp(\mathbf{A}t)\mathbf{x}^0, \tag{28}$$

which is analogous to the solution (18) of the initial value problem (17).

In order to justify more conclusively the use of $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ for the sum of the series (22), we should demonstrate that this matrix function does indeed have the properties we associate with the exponential function. One way to do this is outlined in Problem 15.

Diagonalizable Matrices. The basic reason why a system of linear (algebraic or differential) equations presents some difficulty is that the equations are usually *coupled*. In other words, some or all of the equations involve more than one—typically all—of the unknown variables. Hence the equations in the system must be solved *simultaneously*. In contrast, if each equation involves only a single variable, then each equation can be solved independently of all the others, which is a much easier task. This observation suggests that one way to solve a system of equations might be by transforming it into an equivalent *uncoupled* system in which each equation contains only one unknown variable. This corresponds to transforming the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ into a *diagonal* matrix.

Eigenvectors are useful in accomplishing such a transformation. Suppose that the $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ has a full set of n linearly independent eigenvectors. Recall that this will certainly be the case if the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$ are all different, or if $\mathbf{A}$ is Hermitian.

Letting $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ denote these eigenvectors and $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$ the corresponding eigenvalues, form the matrix $\mathbf{T}$ whose columns are the eigenvectors—that is,

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1^{(1)} & \cdots & \xi_1^{(n)} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \xi_n^{(1)} & \cdots & \xi_n^{(n)} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{29}$$

Since the columns of $\mathbf{T}$ are linearly independent vectors, $\det \mathbf{T} \neq 0$; hence $\mathbf{T}$ is nonsingular and $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ exists. A straightforward calculation shows that the columns of the matrix $\mathbf{AT}$ are just the vectors $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$. Since $\mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(k)} = \lambda_k \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(k)}$, it follows that

$$\mathbf{AT} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 \xi_1^{(1)} & \cdots & \lambda_n \xi_1^{(n)} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \lambda_1 \xi_n^{(1)} & \cdots & \lambda_n \xi_n^{(n)} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{TD}, \tag{30}$$

where

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \tag{31}$$

is a diagonal matrix whose diagonal elements are the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$. From Eq. (30) it follows that

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{AT} = \mathbf{D}. \tag{32}$$

Thus, if the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ are known, $\mathbf{A}$ can be transformed into a diagonal matrix by the process shown in Eq. (32). This process is known as a **similarity transformation**, and Eq. (32) is summed up in words by saying that $\mathbf{A}$ is **similar** to the diagonal matrix $\mathbf{D}$. Alternatively, we may say that $\mathbf{A}$ is **diagonalizable**. Observe that a similarity transformation leaves the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$ unchanged and transforms its eigenvectors into the coordinate vectors $\mathbf{e}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{e}^{(n)}$.

If $\mathbf{A}$ is Hermitian, then the determination of $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ is very simple. The eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ of $\mathbf{A}$ are known to be mutually orthogonal, so let us choose them so that they are also normalized by $(\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(i)}) = 1$ for each i. Then it is easy to verify that $\mathbf{T}^{-1} = \mathbf{T}^*$; in other words, the inverse of $\mathbf{T}$ is the same as its adjoint (the transpose of its complex conjugate).

Finally, we note that if $\mathbf{A}$ has fewer than n linearly independent eigenvectors, then there is no matrix $\mathbf{T}$ such that $\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{AT} = \mathbf{D}$. In this case, $\mathbf{A}$ is not similar to a diagonal matrix and is not diagonalizable.

EXAMPLE 3

Consider the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{33}$$

Find the similarity transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ and show that $\mathbf{A}$ can be diagonalized.

In Example 2 of Section 7.5, we found that the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ are

$$r_1 = 3, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}; \qquad r_2 = -1, \quad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{34}$$

Thus the transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ and its inverse $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ are

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix}; \qquad \mathbf{T}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{35}$$

Consequently, you can check that

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{D}. \tag{36}$$

Now let us turn again to the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{37}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant matrix. In Sections 7.5 and 7.6, we described how to solve such a system by starting from the assumption that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$. Now we provide another viewpoint, one based on diagonalizing the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$.

According to the results stated just above, it is possible to diagonalize $\mathbf{A}$ whenever $\mathbf{A}$ has a full set of n linearly independent eigenvectors. Let $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ be eigenvectors of $\mathbf{A}$ corresponding to the eigenvalues $r_1, \dots, r_n$ and form the transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ whose columns are $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \dots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$. Then, defining a new dependent variable $\mathbf{y}$ by the relation

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}, \tag{38}$$

we have from Eq. (37) that

$$\mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}. \tag{39}$$

Multiplying by $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$, we then obtain

$$\mathbf{y}' = (\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T})\mathbf{y}, \tag{40}$$

or, using Eq. (32),

$$\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{y}. \tag{41}$$

Recall that $\mathbf{D}$ is the diagonal matrix with the eigenvalues $r_1, \dots, r_n$ of $\mathbf{A}$ along the diagonal. A fundamental matrix for the system (41) is the diagonal matrix (see Problem 16)

$$\mathbf{Q}(t) = \exp(\mathbf{D}t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{r_1 t} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & e^{r_2 t} & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & e^{r_n t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{42}$$

A fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Psi}$ for the system (37) is then found from $\mathbf{Q}$ by the transformation (38)

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{Q}; \tag{43}$$

that is,

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \xi_1^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} & \dots & \xi_1^{(n)} e^{r_n t} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \xi_n^{(1)} e^{r_1 t} & \dots & \xi_n^{(n)} e^{r_n t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{44}$$

The columns of $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)$ are the same as the solutions in Eq. (27) of Section 7.5. Thus the diagonalization procedure does not offer any computational advantage over the method of Section 7.5, since in either case it is necessary to calculate the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the coefficient matrix in the system of differential equations.

EXAMPLE 4

Consider again the system of differential equations

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}, \tag{45}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is given by Eq. (33). Using the transformation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}$, where $\mathbf{T}$ is given by Eq. (35), you can reduce the system (45) to the diagonal system

$$\mathbf{y}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{y}. \tag{46}$$

Obtain a fundamental matrix for the system (46), and then transform it to obtain a fundamental matrix for the original system (45).

By multiplying $\mathbf{D}$ repeatedly with itself, we find that

$$\mathbf{D}^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{D}^3 = \begin{pmatrix} 27 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \ldots. \tag{47}$$

Therefore, it follows from Eq. (23) that $\exp(\mathbf{D}t)$ is a diagonal matrix with the entries e^{3t} and e^{-t} on the diagonal; that is,

$$e^{\mathbf{D}t} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{48}$$

Finally, we obtain the required fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)$ by multiplying $\mathbf{T}$ and $\exp(\mathbf{D}t)$:

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-t} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} e^{3t} & e^{-t} \\ 2e^{3t} & -2e^{-t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{49}$$

Observe that this fundamental matrix is the same as the one found in Example 1.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 10:

(a) Find a fundamental matrix for the given system of equations.

(b) Also find the fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(t)$ satisfying $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{4} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{8} & -\frac{3}{4} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 5 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

9. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -8 & -5 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

10. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

11. Solve the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

by using the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ found in Problem 3.

12. Solve the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

by using the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ found in Problem 6.

13. Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t) = \mathbf{\Psi}(t)\mathbf{\Psi}^{-1}(t_0)$, where $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ and $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ are as defined in this section.

14. The fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ for the system (3) was found in Example 2. Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}(s) = \mathbf{\Phi}(t+s)$ by multiplying $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ and $\mathbf{\Phi}(s)$.

15. Let $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)$ denote the fundamental matrix satisfying $\mathbf{\Phi}' = \mathbf{A\Phi}$, $\mathbf{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$. In the text we also denoted this matrix by $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$. In this problem we show that $\mathbf{\Phi}$ does indeed have the principal algebraic properties associated with the exponential function.

(a) Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}(s) = \mathbf{\Phi}(t+s)$; that is, show that $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)\exp(\mathbf{A}s) = \exp[\mathbf{A}(t+s)]$. *Hint:* Show that if s is fixed and t is variable, then both $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}(s)$ and $\mathbf{\Phi}(t+s)$ satisfy the initial value problem $\mathbf{Z}' = \mathbf{AZ}$, $\mathbf{Z}(0) = \mathbf{\Phi}(s)$.

(b) Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}(-t) = \mathbf{I}$; that is, $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)\exp[\mathbf{A}(-t)] = \mathbf{I}$. Then show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(-t) = \mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(t)$.

(c) Show that $\mathbf{\Phi}(t-s) = \mathbf{\Phi}(t)\mathbf{\Phi}^{-1}(s)$.

16. Show that if $\mathbf{A}$ is a diagonal matrix with diagonal elements $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$, then $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$ is also a diagonal matrix with diagonal elements $\exp(a_1 t), \exp(a_2 t), \ldots, \exp(a_n t)$.

17. Consider an oscillator satisfying the initial value problem

$$u'' + \omega^2 u = 0, \qquad u(0) = u_0, \quad u'(0) = v_0. \tag{i}$$

(a) Let $x_1 = u$, $x_2 = u'$, and transform Eqs. (i) into the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0. \tag{ii}$$

(b) By using the series (23), show that

$$\exp \mathbf{A}t = \mathbf{I}\cos\omega t + \mathbf{A}\frac{\sin\omega t}{\omega}. \tag{iii}$$

(c) Find the solution of the initial value problem (ii).

18. The method of successive approximations (see Section 2.8) can also be applied to systems of equations. For example, consider the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{Ax}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \mathbf{x}^0, \tag{i}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is a constant matrix and $\mathbf{x}^0$ is a prescribed vector.

(a) Assuming that a solution $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\phi}(t)$ exists, show that it must satisfy the integral equation

$$\boldsymbol{\phi}(t) = \mathbf{x}^0 + \int_0^t \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\phi}(s)\, ds. \tag{ii}$$

(b) Start with the initial approximation $\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(0)}(t) = \mathbf{x}^0$. Substitute this expression for $\boldsymbol{\phi}(s)$ in the right side of Eq. (ii) and obtain a new approximation $\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(1)}(t)$. Show that

$$\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(1)}(t) = (\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{A}t)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{iii}$$

(c) Repeat this process and thereby obtain a sequence of approximations $\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(0)}$, $\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(1)}$, $\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(2)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\phi}^{(n)}, \ldots$. Use an inductive argument to show that

$$\boldsymbol{\phi}^{(n)}(t) = \left(\mathbf{I} + \mathbf{A}t + \mathbf{A}^2\frac{t^2}{2!} + \cdots + \mathbf{A}^n\frac{t^n}{n!}\right)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{iv}$$

(d) Let $n \to \infty$ and show that the solution of the initial value problem (i) is

$$\boldsymbol{\phi}(t) = \exp(\mathbf{A}t)\mathbf{x}^0. \tag{v}$$

7.8 Repeated Eigenvalues

We conclude our consideration of the linear homogeneous system with constant coefficients

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \tag{1}$$

with a discussion of the case in which the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ has a repeated eigenvalue. Recall that in Section 7.3 we stated that a repeated eigenvalue with algebraic multiplicity $m \geq 2$ may have a geometric multiplicity less than m. In other words, there may be fewer than m linearly independent eigenvectors associated with this eigenvalue. The following example illustrates this possibility.

EXAMPLE 1

Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{2}$$

The eigenvalues r and eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ satisfy the equation $(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}$, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1-r & -1 \\ 1 & 3-r \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3}$$

The eigenvalues are the roots of the equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = \begin{vmatrix} 1-r & -1 \\ 1 & 3-r \end{vmatrix} = r^2 - 4r + 4 = (r-2)^2 = 0. \tag{4}$$

Thus the two eigenvalues are $r_1 = 2$ and $r_2 = 2$; that is, the eigenvalue 2 has algebraic multiplicity 2.

To determine the eigenvectors, we must return to Eq. (3) and use for r the value 2. This gives

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} \xi_1 \\ \xi_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{5}$$

Hence we obtain the single condition $\xi_1 + \xi_2 = 0$, which determines ξ_2 in terms of ξ_1, or vice versa. Thus the eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue $r = 2$ is

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{6}$$

or any nonzero multiple of this vector. Observe that there is only one linearly independent eigenvector associated with the double eigenvalue.

Returning to the system (1), suppose that $r = \rho$ is an m-fold root of the characteristic equation

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - r\mathbf{I}) = 0. \tag{7}$$

Then ρ is an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity m of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$. In this event, there are two possibilities: either there are m linearly independent eigenvectors corresponding to the eigenvalue ρ, or else there are fewer than m such eigenvectors.

In the first case, let $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(m)}$ be m linearly independent eigenvectors associated with the eigenvalue ρ of algebraic multiplicity m. Then there are m linearly independent solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{\rho t}, \ldots, \mathbf{x}^{(m)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(m)}e^{\rho t}$ of Eq. (1). Thus in this case it makes no difference that the eigenvalue $r = \rho$ is repeated; there is still a fundamental set of solutions of Eq. (1) of the form $\boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$. This case always occurs if the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is Hermitian (or real and symmetric).

However, if the coefficient matrix is not Hermitian, then there may be fewer than m independent eigenvectors corresponding to an eigenvalue ρ of algebraic multiplicity m, and if so, there will be fewer than m solutions of Eq. (1) of the form $\boldsymbol{\xi}e^{\rho t}$ associated with this eigenvalue. Therefore, to construct the general solution of Eq. (1), it is necessary to find other solutions of a different form. Recall that a similar situation occurred in Section 3.4 for the linear equation $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$ when the characteristic equation has a double root r. In that case we found one exponential solution $y_1(t) = e^{rt}$, but a second independent solution had the form $y_2(t) = te^{rt}$. With that result in mind, consider the following example.

EXAMPLE 2

Find a fundamental set of solutions of

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}\mathbf{x} \tag{8}$$

and draw a phase portrait for this system.

A direction field for the system (8) is shown in Figure 7.8.1. From this figure it appears that all nonzero solutions depart from the origin.

To solve the system, observe that the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ is the same as the matrix in Example 1. Thus we know that $r = 2$ is a double eigenvalue and that it has only a single corresponding eigenvector, which we may take as $\boldsymbol{\xi}^T = (1, -1)$. Thus one solution of the system (8) is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \tag{9}$$

but there is no second solution of the form $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$.

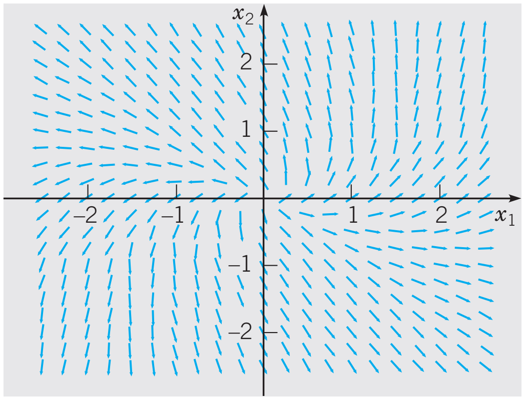


FIGURE 7.8.1 A direction field for the system (8).

Based on the procedure used for second order linear equations in Section 3.4, it may be natural to attempt to find a second independent solution of the system (8) of the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{2t}, \tag{10}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is a constant vector to be determined. Substituting for $\mathbf{x}$ in Eq. (8), we obtain

$$2\boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{2t} - \mathbf{A}\boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{2t} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{11}$$

For Eq. (11) to be satisfied for all t, it is necessary for the coefficients of te^{2t} and e^{2t} both to be zero. From the term in e^{2t} we find that

$$\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{12}$$

Hence there is no nonzero solution of the system (8) of the form (10).

Since Eq. (11) contains terms in both te^{2t} and e^{2t}, it appears that in addition to $\boldsymbol{\xi} te^{2t}$, the second solution must contain a term of the form $\boldsymbol{\eta} e^{2t}$; in other words, we need to assume that

$$\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{2t}, \tag{13}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ are constant vectors to be determined. Upon substituting this expression for $\mathbf{x}$ in Eq. (8), we obtain

$$2\boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{2t} + (\boldsymbol{\xi} + 2\boldsymbol{\eta}) e^{2t} = \mathbf{A}(\boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{2t}). \tag{14}$$

Equating coefficients of te^{2t} and e^{2t} on each side of Eq. (14) gives the two conditions

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0} \tag{15}$$

and

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi} \tag{16}$$

for the determination of $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. Equation (15) is satisfied if $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is an eigenvector of $\mathbf{A}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue $r = 2$, such as $\boldsymbol{\xi}^T = (1, -1)$. Since $\det(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})$ is zero, Eq. (16) is solvable only if the right side $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ satisfies a certain condition. Fortunately, $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and its multiples are exactly the vectors that allow Eq. (16) to be solved. The augmented matrix for Eq. (16) is

$$\left(\begin{array}{cc|c} -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{array}\right).$$

The second row of this matrix is proportional to the first, so the system is solvable. We have

$$-\eta_1 - \eta_2 = 1,$$

so if $\eta_1 = k$, where k is arbitrary, then $\eta_2 = -k - 1$. If we write

$$\boldsymbol{\eta} = \begin{pmatrix} k \\ -1-k \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + k \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{17}$$

then by substituting for $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ in Eq. (13), we obtain

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} + k \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}. \tag{18}$$

The last term in Eq. (18) is merely a multiple of the first solution $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and may be ignored, but the first two terms constitute a new solution:

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}. \tag{19}$$

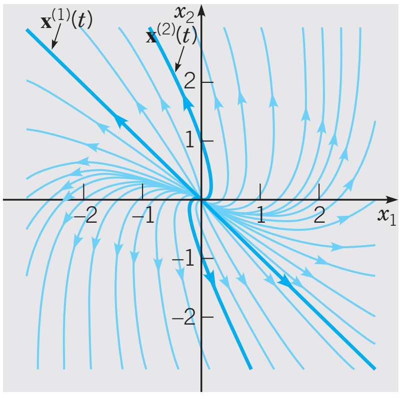
An elementary calculation shows that $W[\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, \mathbf{x}^{(2)}](t) = -e^{4t} \neq 0$, and therefore $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}$ form a fundamental set of solutions of the system (8). The general solution is

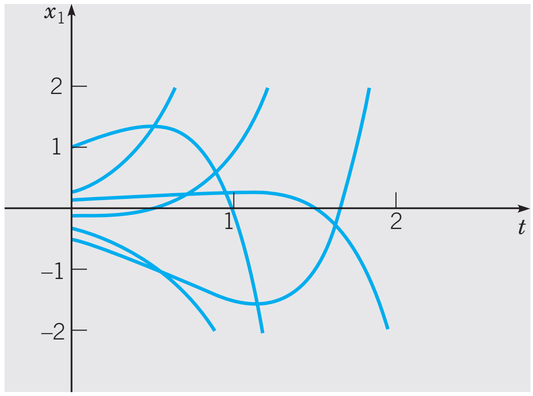
$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + c_2\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) \\ &= c_1 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} + c_2 \left[\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} te^{2t} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t} \right]. \end{aligned} \tag{20}$$

The main features of a phase portrait for the solution (20) follow from the presence of the exponential factor e^{2t} in every term. Therefore $\mathbf{x} \to \mathbf{0}$ as $t \to -\infty$ and, unless both c_1 and c_2 are zero, $\mathbf{x}$ becomes unbounded as $t \to \infty$. If c_1 and c_2 are not both zero, then along any trajectory we have

$$\lim_{t\to-\infty} \frac{x_2(t)}{x_1(t)} = \lim_{t\to-\infty} \frac{-c_1 - c_2 t - c_2}{c_1 + c_2 t} = -1.$$

Therefore, as $t \to -\infty$, every trajectory approaches the origin tangent to the line $x_2 = -x_1$ determined by the eigenvector; this behavior is clearly evident in Figure 7.8.2*a*. Further, as $t \to \infty$, the slope of each trajectory also approaches -1. However, it is possible to show that trajectories do not approach asymptotes as $t \to \infty$. Several trajectories of the system (8) are shown in Figure 7.8.2*a*, and some typical plots of x_1 versus t are shown in Figure 7.8.2*b*. The pattern of trajectories in this figure is typical of 2×2 systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ with equal eigenvalues and only one independent eigenvector. The origin is called an **improper node** in this case. If the eigenvalues are negative, then the trajectories are similar but are traversed in the inward direction. An improper node is asymptotically stable or unstable, depending on whether the eigenvalues are negative or positive.





(a) (b)

FIGURE 7.8.2 (a) Phase portrait of the system (8); the origin is an improper node. (b) Plots of x_1 versus t for the system (8).

One difference between a system of two first order equations and a single second order equation is evident from the preceding example. For a second order linear equation with a repeated root r_1 of the characteristic equation, a term $ce^{r_1 t}$ in the second solution is not required since it is a multiple of the first solution. On the other hand, for a system of two first order equations, the term $\boldsymbol{\eta} e^{r_1 t}$ of Eq. (13) with $r_1 = 2$ is not, in general, a multiple of the first solution $\boldsymbol{\xi} e^{r_1 t}$, so the term $\boldsymbol{\eta} e^{r_1 t}$ must be retained.

Example 2 is entirely typical of the general case when there is a double eigenvalue and a single associated eigenvector. Consider again the system (1), and suppose that $r = \rho$ is a double eigenvalue of $\mathbf{A}$, but that there is only one corresponding eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$. Then one solution [similar to Eq. (9)] is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{\rho t}, \tag{21}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ satisfies

$$(\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}. \tag{22}$$

By proceeding as in Example 2, we find that a second solution [similar to Eq. (19)] is

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{\rho t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{\rho t}, \tag{23}$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ satisfies Eq. (22) and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ is determined from

$$(\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}. \tag{24}$$

Even though $\det(\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I}) = 0$, it can be shown that it is always possible to solve Eq. (24) for $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. Note that if we multiply Eq. (24) by $\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I}$ and use Eq. (22), then we obtain

$$(\mathbf{A} - \rho\mathbf{I})^2\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{0}.$$

The vector $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ is called a **generalized eigenvector** of the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ corresponding to the eigenvalue ρ.

Fundamental Matrices. As explained in Section 7.7, fundamental matrices are formed by arranging linearly independent solutions in columns. Thus, for example, a fundamental matrix for the system (8) can be formed from the solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ from Eqs. (9) and (19), respectively:

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{2t} & te^{2t} \\ -e^{2t} & -te^{2t} - e^{2t} \end{pmatrix} = e^{2t}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ -1 & -1-t \end{pmatrix}. \tag{25}$$

The particular fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Phi}$ that satisfies $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(0) = \mathbf{I}$ can also be readily found from the relation $\boldsymbol{\Phi}(t) = \boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)\boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(0)$. For Eq. (8) we have

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{26}$$

and then

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\Phi}(t) = \boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)\boldsymbol{\Psi}^{-1}(0) &= e^{2t}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & t \\ -1 & -1-t \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= e^{2t}\begin{pmatrix} 1-t & -t \\ t & 1+t \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned} \tag{27}$$

The latter matrix is also the exponential matrix $\exp(\mathbf{A}t)$.

Jordan Forms. An $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{A}$ can be diagonalized as discussed in Section 7.7 only if it has a full complement of n linearly independent eigenvectors. If there is a shortage of eigenvectors (because of repeated eigenvalues), then $\mathbf{A}$ can always be transformed into a nearly diagonal matrix called its Jordan[6] form, which has the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$ on the main diagonal, ones in certain positions on the diagonal above the main diagonal, and zeros elsewhere.

Consider again the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ given by Eq. (2). To transform $\mathbf{A}$ into its Jordan form, we construct the transformation matrix $\mathbf{T}$ with the single eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ from Eq. (6) in its first column and the generalized eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ from Eq. (17) with $k = 0$ in the second column. Then $\mathbf{T}$ and its inverse are given by

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \mathbf{T}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{28}$$

As you can verify, it follows that

$$\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{J}. \tag{29}$$

The matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in Eq. (29) is the Jordan form of $\mathbf{A}$. It is typical of all Jordan forms in that it has a 1 above the main diagonal in the column corresponding to the eigenvector that is lacking (and is replaced in $\mathbf{T}$ by the generalized eigenvector).

If we start again from Eq. (1)

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x},$$

[6]Marie Ennemond Camille Jordan (1838–1922) was professor at the École Polytechnique and the Collège de France. He is known for his important contributions to analysis and to topology (the Jordan curve theorem) and especially for his foundational work in group theory. The Jordan form of a matrix appeared in his influential book *Traité des substitutions et des équations algébriques*, published in 1870.

the transformation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}$, where $\mathbf{T}$ is given by Eq. (28), produces the system

$$\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{J}\mathbf{y}, \tag{30}$$

where $\mathbf{J}$ is given by Eq. (29). In scalar form the system (30) is

$$y_1' = 2y_1 + y_2, \qquad y_2' = 2y_2. \tag{31}$$

These equations can be solved readily in reverse order—that is, by starting with the equation for y_2. In this way we obtain

$$y_2 = c_1 e^{2t}, \qquad y_1 = c_1 t e^{2t} + c_2 e^{2t}. \tag{32}$$

Thus two independent solutions of the system (30) are

$$\mathbf{y}^{(1)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \qquad \mathbf{y}^{(2)}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} t \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{2t}, \tag{33}$$

and the corresponding fundamental matrix is

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Psi}}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{2t} & te^{2t} \\ 0 & e^{2t} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{34}$$

Since $\hat{\boldsymbol{\Psi}}(0) = \mathbf{I}$, we can also identify the matrix in Eq. (34) as $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$. The same result can be reached by calculating powers of $\mathbf{J}$ and substituting them into the exponential series (see Problems 20 through 22). To obtain a fundamental matrix for the original system, we now form the product

$$\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t) = \mathbf{T}\exp(\mathbf{J}t) = \begin{pmatrix} e^{2t} & te^{2t} \\ -e^{2t} & -e^{2t} - te^{2t} \end{pmatrix}, \tag{35}$$

which is the same as the fundamental matrix given in Eq. (25).

We will not discuss $n \times n$ systems $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ in more detail here. For large n it is possible that there may be eigenvalues of high algebraic multiplicity m, perhaps with much lower geometric multiplicity q, thus giving rise to $m - q$ generalized eigenvectors. For $n \geq 4$ there may also be repeated complex eigenvalues. A full discussion[7] of the Jordan form of a general $n \times n$ matrix requires a greater background in linear algebra than we assume for most readers of this book. Problems 18 through 22 ask you to explore the use of Jordan forms for systems of three equations.

The amount of arithmetic required in the analysis of a general $n \times n$ system may be prohibitive to do by hand even if n is no greater than 3 or 4. Consequently, suitable computer software should be used routinely in most cases. This does not overcome all difficulties by any means, but it does make many problems much more tractable. Finally, for a set of equations arising from modeling a physical system, it is likely that some of the elements in the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ result from measurements of some physical quantity. The inevitable uncertainties in such measurements lead to uncertainties in the values of the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{A}$. For example, in such a case it may not be clear whether two eigenvalues are actually equal or are merely close together.

[7] For example, see the books listed in the References at the end of this chapter.

PROBLEMS

In each of Problems 1 through 4:

(a) Draw a direction field and sketch a few trajectories.

(b) Describe how the solutions behave as $t \to \infty$.

(c) Find the general solution of the system of equations.

1. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

2. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 8 & -4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

3. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{2} & 1 \\ -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

4. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & \frac{5}{2} \\ -\frac{5}{2} & 2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 5 and 6, find the general solution of the given system of equations.

5. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

6. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

In each of Problems 7 through 10:

(a) Find the solution of the given initial value problem.

(b) Draw the trajectory of the solution in the x_1x_2-plane, and also draw the graph of x_1 versus t.

7. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 4 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$

8. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{5}{2} & \frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

9. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & \frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$

10. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 9 \\ -1 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$

In each of Problems 11 and 12:

(a) Find the solution of the given initial value problem.

(b) Draw the corresponding trajectory in $x_1x_2x_3$-space, and also draw the graph of x_1 versus t.

11. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 6 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ -30 \end{pmatrix}$

12. $\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{5}{2} & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -\frac{5}{2} & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -\frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}, \qquad \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$

In each of Problems 13 and 14, solve the given system of equations by the method of Problem 19 of Section 7.5. Assume that $t > 0$.

13. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

14. $t\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 4 & -7 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$

15. Show that all solutions of the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}$$

approach zero as $t \to \infty$ if and only if $a + d < 0$ and $ad - bc > 0$. Compare this result with that of Problem 37 in Section 3.4.

16. Consider again the electric circuit in Problem 26 of Section 7.6. This circuit is described by the system of differential equations

$$\frac{d}{dt}\begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \dfrac{1}{L} \\ -\dfrac{1}{C} & -\dfrac{1}{RC} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I \\ V \end{pmatrix}.$$

(a) Show that the eigenvalues are real and equal if $L = 4R^2C$.

(b) Suppose that $R = 1\ \Omega$, $C = 1$ F, and $L = 4$ H. Suppose also that $I(0) = 1$ A and $V(0) = 2$ V. Find $I(t)$ and $V(t)$.

17. Consider again the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} \tag{i}$$

that we discussed in Example 2. We found there that $\mathbf{A}$ has a double eigenvalue $r_1 = r_2 = 2$ with a single independent eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = (1, -1)^T$, or any nonzero multiple thereof. Thus one solution of the system (i) is $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}e^{2t}$ and a second independent solution has the form

$$\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t) = \boldsymbol{\xi}te^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta}e^{2t},$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ satisfy

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}, \qquad (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}. \tag{ii}$$

In the text we solved the first equation for $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and then the second equation for $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. Here we ask you to proceed in the reverse order.

(a) Show that $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ satisfies $(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})^2\boldsymbol{\eta} = \mathbf{0}$.

(b) Show that $(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})^2 = \mathbf{0}$. Thus the generalized eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ can be chosen arbitrarily, except that it must be independent of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$.

(c) Let $\boldsymbol{\eta} = (0, -1)^T$. Then determine $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ from the second of Eqs. (ii) and observe that $\boldsymbol{\xi} = (1, -1)^T = \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$. This choice of $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ reproduces the solution found in Example 2.

(d) Let $\boldsymbol{\eta} = (1, 0)^T$ and determine the corresponding eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$.

(e) Let $\boldsymbol{\eta} = (k_1, k_2)^T$, where k_1 and k_2 are arbitrary numbers. Then determine $\boldsymbol{\xi}$. How is it related to the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$?

Eigenvalues of Multiplicity 3. If the matrix $\mathbf{A}$ has an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 3, then there may be either one, two, or three corresponding linearly independent eigenvectors. The general solution of the system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$ is different, depending on the number of eigenvectors associated with the triple eigenvalue. As noted in the text, there is no difficulty if there are three eigenvectors, since then there are three independent solutions of the form $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}e^{rt}$. The following two problems illustrate the solution procedure for a triple eigenvalue with one or two eigenvectors, respectively.

18. Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{i}$$

(a) Show that $r = 2$ is an eigenvalue of algebraic multiplicity 3 of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and that there is only one corresponding eigenvector, namely,

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

(b) Using the information in part (a), write down one solution $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ of the system (i). There is no other solution of the purely exponential form $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} e^{rt}$.

(c) To find a second solution, assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{2t}$. Show that $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ satisfy the equations

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}, \qquad (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}.$$

Since $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ has already been found in part (a), solve the second equation for $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. Neglect the multiple of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ that appears in $\boldsymbol{\eta}$, since it leads only to a multiple of the first solution $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$. Then write down a second solution $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ of the system (i).

(d) To find a third solution, assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi}(t^2/2)e^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} t e^{2t} + \boldsymbol{\zeta} e^{2t}$. Show that $\boldsymbol{\xi}$, $\boldsymbol{\eta}$, and $\boldsymbol{\zeta}$ satisfy the equations

$$(\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}, \qquad (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}, \qquad (\mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\zeta} = \boldsymbol{\eta}.$$

The first two equations are the same as in part (c), so solve the third equation for $\boldsymbol{\zeta}$, again neglecting the multiple of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ that appears. Then write down a third solution $\mathbf{x}^{(3)}(t)$ of the system (i).

(e) Write down a fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)$ for the system (i).

(f) Form a matrix $\mathbf{T}$ with the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ in the first column and the generalized eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\zeta}$ in the second and third columns. Then find $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ and form the product $\mathbf{J} = \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T}$. The matrix $\mathbf{J}$ is the Jordan form of $\mathbf{A}$.

19. Consider the system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -3 & -2 \\ 8 & -5 & -4 \\ -4 & 3 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x}. \tag{i}$$

(a) Show that $r = 1$ is a triple eigenvalue of the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$ and that there are only two linearly independent eigenvectors, which we may take as

$$\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{ii}$$

Write down two linearly independent solutions $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t)$ and $\mathbf{x}^{(2)}(t)$ of Eq. (i).

(b) To find a third solution, assume that $\mathbf{x} = \boldsymbol{\xi} t e^{t} + \boldsymbol{\eta} e^{t}$; then show that $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ must satisfy

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\xi} = \mathbf{0}, \tag{iii}$$

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{I})\boldsymbol{\eta} = \boldsymbol{\xi}. \tag{iv}$$

(c) Equation (iii) is satisfied if $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is an eigenvector, so one way to proceed is to choose $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ to be a suitable linear combination of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$ so that Eq. (iv) is solvable, and then to solve that equation for $\boldsymbol{\eta}$. However, let us proceed in a different way and follow the pattern of Problem 17. First, show that $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ satisfies

$$(\mathbf{A}-\mathbf{I})^2\boldsymbol{\eta}=\mathbf{0}.$$

Further, show that $(\mathbf{A}-\mathbf{I})^2=\mathbf{0}$. Thus $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ can be chosen arbitrarily, except that it must be independent of $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ and $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(2)}$.

(d) A convenient choice for $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ is $\boldsymbol{\eta}=(0,0,1)^T$. Find the corresponding $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ from Eq. (iv). Verify that $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ is an eigenvector.

(e) Write down a fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)$ for the system (i).

(f) Form a matrix $\mathbf{T}$ with the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}$ in the first column and with the eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ from part (d) and the generalized eigenvector $\boldsymbol{\eta}$ in the other two columns. Find $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$ and form the product $\mathbf{J}=\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{AT}$. The matrix $\mathbf{J}$ is the Jordan form of $\mathbf{A}$.

20. Let $\mathbf{J}=\begin{pmatrix}\lambda & 1\\ 0 & \lambda\end{pmatrix}$, where λ is an arbitrary real number.

(a) Find $\mathbf{J}^2$, $\mathbf{J}^3$, and $\mathbf{J}^4$.

(b) Use an inductive argument to show that $\mathbf{J}^n=\begin{pmatrix}\lambda^n & n\lambda^{n-1}\\ 0 & \lambda^n\end{pmatrix}$.

(c) Determine $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$.

(d) Use $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$ to solve the initial value problem $\mathbf{x}'=\mathbf{Jx}$, $\mathbf{x}(0)=\mathbf{x}^0$.

21. Let

$$\mathbf{J}=\begin{pmatrix}\lambda & 0 & 0\\ 0 & \lambda & 1\\ 0 & 0 & \lambda\end{pmatrix},$$

where λ is an arbitrary real number.

(a) Find $\mathbf{J}^2$, $\mathbf{J}^3$, and $\mathbf{J}^4$.

(b) Use an inductive argument to show that

$$\mathbf{J}^n=\begin{pmatrix}\lambda^n & 0 & 0\\ 0 & \lambda^n & n\lambda^{n-1}\\ 0 & 0 & \lambda^n\end{pmatrix}.$$

(c) Determine $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$.

(d) Observe that if you choose $\lambda=1$, then the matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in this problem is the same as the matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in Problem 19(f). Using the matrix $\mathbf{T}$ from Problem 19(f), form the product $\mathbf{T}\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$ with $\lambda=1$. Is the resulting matrix the same as the fundamental matrix $\boldsymbol{\Psi}(t)$ in Problem 19(e)? If not, explain the discrepancy.

22. Let

$$\mathbf{J}=\begin{pmatrix}\lambda & 1 & 0\\ 0 & \lambda & 1\\ 0 & 0 & \lambda\end{pmatrix},$$

where λ is an arbitrary real number.

(a) Find $\mathbf{J}^2$, $\mathbf{J}^3$, and $\mathbf{J}^4$.

(b) Use an inductive argument to show that

$$\mathbf{J}^n = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^n & n\lambda^{n-1} & [n(n-1)/2]\lambda^{n-2} \\ 0 & \lambda^n & n\lambda^{n-1} \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda^n \end{pmatrix}.$$

(c) Determine $\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$.

(d) Note that if you choose $\lambda = 2$, then the matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in this problem is the same as the matrix $\mathbf{J}$ in Problem 18(f). Using the matrix $\mathbf{T}$ from Problem 18(f), form the product $\mathbf{T}\exp(\mathbf{J}t)$ with $\lambda = 2$. The resulting matrix is the same as the fundamental matrix $\mathbf{\Psi}(t)$ in Problem 18(e).

7.9 Nonhomogeneous Linear Systems

In this section we turn to the nonhomogeneous system

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t), \tag{1}$$

where the $n \times n$ matrix $\mathbf{P}(t)$ and $n \times 1$ vector $\mathbf{g}(t)$ are continuous for $\alpha < t < \beta$. By the same argument as in Section 3.5 (see also Problem 16 in this section), the general solution of Eq. (1) can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t) + \mathbf{v}(t), \tag{2}$$

where $c_1\mathbf{x}^{(1)}(t) + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{x}^{(n)}(t)$ is the general solution of the homogeneous system $\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{P}(t)\mathbf{x}$, and $\mathbf{v}(t)$ is a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous system (1). We will briefly describe several methods for determining $\mathbf{v}(t)$.

Diagonalization. We begin with systems of the form

$$\mathbf{x}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{g}(t), \tag{3}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is an $n \times n$ diagonalizable constant matrix. By diagonalizing the coefficient matrix $\mathbf{A}$, as indicated in Section 7.7, we can transform Eq. (3) into a system of equations that is readily solvable.

Let $\mathbf{T}$ be the matrix whose columns are the eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ of $\mathbf{A}$, and define a new dependent variable $\mathbf{y}$ by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}. \tag{4}$$

Then, substituting for $\mathbf{x}$ in Eq. (3), we obtain

$$\mathbf{T}\mathbf{y}' = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{T}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{g}(t).$$

When we multiply by $\mathbf{T}^{-1}$, it follows that

$$\mathbf{y}' = (\mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{A}\mathbf{T})\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{g}(t) = \mathbf{D}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{h}(t), \tag{5}$$

where $\mathbf{h}(t) = \mathbf{T}^{-1}\mathbf{g}(t)$ and where $\mathbf{D}$ is the diagonal matrix whose diagonal entries are the eigenvalues $r_1, \ldots, r_n$ of $\mathbf{A}$, arranged in the same order as the corresponding eigenvectors $\boldsymbol{\xi}^{(1)}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\xi}^{(n)}$ that appear as columns of $\mathbf{T}$. Equation (5) is a system of

Elementary Laplace Transforms

$f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\{F(s)\}$	$F(s) = \mathcal{L}\{f(t)\}$	Notes
1. 1	$\dfrac{1}{s}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 4
2. e^{at}	$\dfrac{1}{s-a}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 5
3. $t^n, \quad n =$ positive integer	$\dfrac{n!}{s^{n+1}}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 31
4. $t^p, \quad p > -1$	$\dfrac{\Gamma(p+1)}{s^{p+1}}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 31
5. $\sin at$	$\dfrac{a}{s^2+a^2}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Ex. 7
6. $\cos at$	$\dfrac{s}{s^2+a^2}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 6
7. $\sinh at$	$\dfrac{a}{s^2-a^2}, \quad s > \lvert a \rvert$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 8
8. $\cosh at$	$\dfrac{s}{s^2-a^2}, \quad s > \lvert a \rvert$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 7
9. $e^{at}\sin bt$	$\dfrac{b}{(s-a)^2+b^2}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 13
10. $e^{at}\cos bt$	$\dfrac{s-a}{(s-a)^2+b^2}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 14
11. $t^n e^{at}, \quad n =$ positive integer	$\dfrac{n!}{(s-a)^{n+1}}, \quad s > a$	Sec. 6.1; Prob. 18
12. $u_c(t)$	$\dfrac{e^{-cs}}{s}, \quad s > 0$	Sec. 6.3
13. $u_c(t)f(t-c)$	$e^{-cs}F(s)$	Sec. 6.3
14. $e^{ct}f(t)$	$F(s-c)$	Sec. 6.3
15. $f(ct)$	$\dfrac{1}{c}F\left(\dfrac{s}{c}\right), \quad c > 0$	Sec. 6.3; Prob. 25
16. $\displaystyle\int_0^t f(t-\tau)g(\tau)\,d\tau$	$F(s)G(s)$	Sec. 6.6
17. $\delta(t-c)$	e^{-cs}	Sec. 6.5
18. $f^{(n)}(t)$	$s^n F(s) - s^{n-1}f(0) - \cdots - f^{(n-1)}(0)$	Sec. 6.2; Cor. 6.2.2
19. $(-t)^n f(t)$	$F^{(n)}(s)$	Sec. 6.2; Prob. 29